A CARDIFF GRAMMAR ANALYSIS OF THE SIMPLE CLAUSE IN MODERN STANDARD ARABIC

HANAA NAJI SALEH SAMAHA

FACULTY OF LANGUAGES AND LINGUISTICS UNIVERSITI MALAYA KUALA LUMPUR

2022

A CARDIFF GRAMMAR ANALYSIS OF THE SIMPLE CLAUSE IN MODERN STANDARD ARABIC

HANAA NAJI SALEH SAMAHA

THESIS SUBMITTED IN FULFILMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

FACULTY OF LANGUAGES AND LINGUISTICS UNIVERSITI MALAYA KUALA LUMPUR

UNIVERSITI MALAYA ORIGINAL LITERARY WORK DECLARATION

Name of Candidate: Hanaa Naji Saleh Samaha

Matric No: TVA170001 /17058347/1

Name of Degree: **Doctor of Philosophy**

Title of Dissertation: A Cardiff Grammar Analysis of the Simple Clause in Modern

Standard Arabic.

Field of Study: Syntax (Systemic Functional Linguistics)

I do solemnly and sincerely declare that:

- (1) I am the sole author/writer of this Work;
- (2) This Work is original;
- (3) Any use of any work in which copyright exists was done by way of fair dealing and for permitted purposes and any excerpt or extract from, or reference to or reproduction of any copyright work has been disclosed expressly and sufficiently and the title of the Work and its authorship have been acknowledged in this Work;
- (4) I do not have any actual knowledge nor do I ought reasonably to know that the making of this work constitutes an infringement of any copyright work;
- (5) I hereby assign all and every rights in the copyright to this Work to the University of Malaya ("UM"), who henceforth shall be owner of the copyright in this Work and that any reproduction or use in any form or by any means whatsoever is prohibited without the written consent of UM having been first had and obtained;
- (6) I am fully aware that if in the course of making this Work I have infringed any copyright whether intentionally or otherwise, I may be subject to legal action or any other action as may be determined by UM.

Candidate's Signature Date: 10/05/2022

Subscribed and solemnly declared before,

Witness's Signature Date: 03/06/2022

Name:

Designation:

A CARDIFF GRAMMAR ANALYSIS OF THE SIMPLE CLAUSE IN MODERN STANDARD ARABIC

ABSTRACT

A dearth of literature has been found concerning matching the language components of form and meaning while exploring different linguistic issues in Modern Standard Arabic (MSA). Therefore, this study aims to identify the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple clause in MSA by utilizing the Cardiff Grammar (CG) model of Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL). The study examines both types of clauses in MSA: the simple nominal clause (NCI) and the simple verbal clause (VCI), with the focus on matching the syntactic properties with the semantic features of the Transitivity system network and integrating them into one single tree diagram structure. The data for the current study consists of five editorials and five articles selected from ten daily newspapers written in the Arabic language and published in 2018. The findings have revealed that the NCls express a 'relational attributive' meaning or different sub-types of 'relational' meanings when the Complement is a single item, phrasal, or filled by an embedded nominal clause. But when the Complement is filled by an embedded verbal clause, the NCls express various types of Experiential meanings based on the sense of Process (Main verb) used in the embedded verbal clause. Concerning the VCls, the findings have indicated that MSA does not include zero-role Processes because Processes are usually associated with at least one Participant Role (PR), two PRs, three PRs, and four PRs. The study has offered two alternative accounts for the 'cognition' Processes as either two-role Processes or three-role Processes and two alternative accounts for 'communication' Processes as either three-role Processes or four-role Processes. The findings have revealed the significant role of the words' case endings in determining the function of elements in MSA. The study has also shown the CG model as an applicable

analytical model used to describe languages at the level of form as well as the level of meaning.

Keywords: Syntax, semantics, simple clause, Cardiff Grammar, Modern Standard Arabic

ANALISA KLAUSA MUDAH DALAM BAHASA ARAB MODEN STANDARD MENGGUNAKAN TATABAHASA CARDIFF

ABSTRK

Kekurangan dalam kesusasteraan berkenaan kesepadanan komponen bahasa dalam bentuk dan makna telah dijumpai dalam menyelidik pelbagai masalah linguistik dalam Bahasa Arab Standard Moden (MSA). Oleh itu, kajian ini bertujuan untuk mengenal pasti sifat sintaksis dan semantik klausa mudah di MSA dengan menggunakan model Cardiff Grammar (CG) Linguistik fungsional sistemik (SFL). Kajian ini mengkaji kedua-dua jenis klausa di MSA: klausa nominal sederhana (NCl) dan klausa verbal sederhana (VCl) dengan fokus untuk memadanmkan sifat sintaksis dengan ciri semantik rangkaian sistem Transitiviti dan mengintegrasikannya ke dalam satu struktur diagram pepohon tunggal. Data untuk kajian semasa terdiri daripada lima editorial dan lima artikel yang dipilih dari sepuluh surat khabar harian yang ditulis dalam bahasa Arab dan diterbitkan pada tahun 2018. Penemuan ini telah menunjukkan bahawa NCl menyatakan sub-jenis makna 'relasional' yang berbeza ketika Pelengkap adalah satu item, phrasal, atau diisi oleh klausa nominal tertanam. Tetapi apabila Pelengkap diisi oleh klausa verbal tertanam, NCl menyatakan pelbagai jenis makna Pengalaman berdasarkan pengertian Proses (kata kerja Utama) yang digunakan dalam klausa verbal tertanam. Berkenaan VCl, penemuan telah menunjukkan bahawa MSA tidak termasuk Proses tanpa peranan kerana Proses biasanya dikaitkan dengan sekurang-kurangnya satu Peranan Peserta (PR), dua PR, tiga PR, dan empat PR. Selain itu, kajian ini telah menawarkan dua akaun alternatif untuk Proses 'kognisi' sebagai Proses dua peranan atau Proses tiga peranan dan dua akaun alternatif untuk Proses 'komunikasi' sebagai Proses tiga peranan atau Proses empat peranan. Penemuan ini telah menunjukkan peranan penting dalam kes akhir kata menentukan fungsi elemen dalam MSA. Kajian ini juga menunjukkan bahawa model CG ini sebagai

model analitik yang kuat yang boleh digunakan untuk menggambarkan bahasa pada tahap bentuk dan tahap makna.

Kata kunci: Sintaks, semantik, klausa bebas, Tatabahasa Cardiff, Bahasa Arab Standard Moden

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

To end up the long arduous journey of a Ph.D. peacefully and successfully, some individuals have bestowed upon me their support and blessings, without which this journey would not have been possible. First and foremost, I would like to thank Almighty Allah for providing me with the sufficient faith and patience that have enabled me to complete this dissertation with success. For me, Ph.D. is like the clause structure in which this dissertation is the Subject that could not stand without the existence of certain Predicative individuals who are its Complement. Therefore, I owe a special debt of gratitude to my supervisors Dr. Yap Teng Teng and Dr. Kumaran Rajandran, who have been advising, directing, encouraging, and correcting me in every stage of my Ph.D. journey. Besides their timely suggestions, wonderful insights, and valuable feedback, they have always shown me remarkable understanding and academic flexibility in discussing the ideas that I sometimes come up with. I have been immeasurably enriched by being under their supervision which broadens my knowledge and shapes my academic character.

I am highly obliged to sincerely thank the emeritus Prof. Robert Fawcett, the founder of the Cardiff Grammar, for sharing with me his enthusiasm about applying his model to the Arabic language. He was also the main source for the dissertation's necessary published and unpublished references. My deepest thanks are extended to Prof. Abdul Malek Al-Husami who spared no effort to analyze the Arabic examples and confirm the knowledge I have concerning the syntax of Modern Standard Arabic. I would also like to extend my heartfelt thanks and appreciation to Dr. John Keating, Department of Computer Science, Maynooth University, and his student Colm Rourk who have developed the software program utilized to generate the functional analysis of the selected examples. I went through tough times when the software program was entirely down for

days. However, they were constantly contacting me and doing their best to keep me going and resuming my analysis.

Finally, I am highly indebted to my loving siblings, who have believed in me and kept encouraging me constantly. This dissertation would not have seen the light if my family were not the source of hope, support, and love that provided me with the energy to work unstoppably. My words and expressions remain senseless when I talk about My mother, with whom I started my Ph.D. journey and for whom I managed to end it. Before she passed away on June 22nd 2020, she had sowed the seeds of passion for knowledge. She was the soft loving wall on which I rested when I felt frustrated and desperate. She is physically absent now, but her spirit still surrounds me wherever I go, echoing her sincere prayers and endless unconditional love. I dedicate this work to her soul and told her that I would see your smile on the faces of all those who assist me; I would carve all your words, advice, and instructions in my mind, and I would let them lighten my way till I join you in your eternal heaven.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A ca	ardiff Grammar Analysis of the Simple Clause in Modern Standard Arabic	iii
Ana	alisa Klausa Mudah dalam Bahasa Arab Moden Standard Menggunakan Ta	tabahasa
Caro	diff	v
Ack	knowledgements	vii
Tabl	le of Contents	ix
List	of Figures	XV
List	of Tables	xxi
List	t of Symbols and Abbreviations	xxii
List	of Appendices	xxvii
CH	APTER 1: INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	Background of the Study	
1.2	Statement of the Study Problem	3
1.3	Objectives of the Study	5
1.4	Research Questions	5
1.5	Significance of the Study	6
1.6	Limitations of the Study	7
1.7	Terminology and Definitions	8
1.8	Overview of the Study	10
1.9	Conclusion	12
CH	APTER 2: LITERATURE REVIEW	13
2.1	Introduction	13
2.2	Research within the Chomskyan Approach	13
2.3	Research within the Arabic Grammatical Tradition	17

2.4	Resear	ch within Systemic Functional Grammar	21
	2.4.1	Research within Halliday's Sydney Grammar	21
	2.4.2	Research within the Cardiff Grammar	25
2.5	Conclu	ısion	32
CHA	APTER	3: OVERVIEW OF THE CARDIFF GRAMMAR	35
3.1	Introdu	uction	35
3.2	Lingui	stic Systems in Halliday's SFL	35
	3.2.1	System and Structure in SFL	36
	3.2.2	Stratification	37
	3.2.3	Instantiation	37
	3.2.4	Metafunction	
3.3	The Ca	ardiff Grammar	39
	3.3.1	The Cardiff Grammar as a Generative Approach	42
		3.3.1.1 Meaning and form in the CG	42
		3.3.1.2 System networks in the CG	43
	3.3.2	The CG as a Functional Descriptive Approach	46
		3.3.2.1 Basic categories and relationships in the CG	46
	3.3.3	The Clause Syntax as the Central Unit in the CG	48
	3.3.4	Parataxis and Hypotaxis vs. Co-ordination and Embedding	53
	3.3.5	Transitivity System Network in the CG	55
		3.3.5.1 Process types in the CG	56
	3.3.6	Re-expression Tests for Participant Roles in the CG	66
3.4	Conclu	usion	66
CHA	APTER	4: OVERVIEW OFARABIC SYNTAX	68
4.1	Introdu	action	68

4.2	Arabic	Varieties	68
4.3	The En	nergence of Arabic Grammar	69
4.4	The Sci	hools of Arabic Grammar	70
	4.4.1	The Bṣaran School	71
	4.4.2	The Kūfan School	72
	4.4.3	The Baghdādian School	73
4.5	Arabic	Syntactic Clause Structure	74
	4.5.1	الفاعل (al-Fā'il) (Subject) vs. المبتدأ (al-Mubtad') (Topic/Subject) الفاعل	76
4.6	Clause	Types in MSA	77
	4.6.1	الجملة الإسمية (al-Jumlatu al-Ismiyyah) (The Nominal Clause)	78
	4.6.2	الجملة الفعلية (al-Jumlatu al-Fiʻliyyah) (The Verbal Clause)	82
4.7	Semant	cic Aspects in the Arabic Syntax	84
4.8	Major (Clause vs. Minor Clause in MSA	85
4.9	Word C	Classes in MSA	86
	4.9.1	Verbs	87
	4.9.2	Nouns	89
	4.9.3	Particles	91
4.10	Conclu	sion	93
СНА	PTER :	5: METHODOLOGY	95
5.1	Introdu	ction	95
5.2	Researc	ch Design	95
5.3	Data Co	ollection	96
5.4	Data Se	election	98
	5.4.1	Criteria for the Simple Clause Selection	99
5.5	Data D	escription	101
	5.5.1	Transliteration	102

	5.5.2	Translation 104
	5.5.3	Tree Diagram
5.6	Data A	nalysis
	5.6.1	Syntactic Analysis of Data
	5.6.2	Semantic Analysis of Data
5.7	Resear	ch Analytical Stages108
	5.7.1	Coding
	5.7.2	Content Classification
	5.7.3	Analyzing and Labeling
	5.7.4	Final Functional Representation
5.8	Conclu	nsion111
CHA	APTER	6: SYNTACTIC AND SEMANTIC PROPERTIES OF THE SIMPLE
NO	MINAL	CLAUSE WITHIN THE CARDIFF GRAMMAR112
6.1	Introdu	nction112
6.2	Classif	ication of the Simple Nominal Clause Based on the Structure of the
	Compl	ement112
	6.2.1	Syntactic and Semantic Properties of Simple nominal Clauses with a
		Single-Item Complement
	6.2.2	Syntactic and Semantic Properties of Simple Nominal Clauses with a
		Phrasal Complement
	6.2.3	Syntactic and Semantic Properties of Simple Nominal Clauses with a
		Clausal Complement
		6.2.3.1 Simple nominal clauses with a nominal clausal Complement 133
		6.2.3.2 Simple nominal clauses with a verbal clausal Complement 140
6.3	Revers	ibility in the Simple Nominal Verbless Clause151
	6.3.1	Optional Reversibility151

	6.3.2	Obligatory Reversibility	157
6.4	ر الفصل	ضمير (Damīr al-Faṣl) (Separation Pronoun)	161
6.5	Conclu	usion	167
CHA	APTER	7: SYNTACTIC AND SEMANTIC PROPERTIES OF T	HE SIMPLE
VEI	RBAL C	CLAUSE WITHIN THE CARDIFF GRAMMAR	170
7.1	Introdu	uction	170
7.2	Classit	fication of the Simple Verbal Clause Based on the Number of	f the Process's
	PRs	170	
	7.2.1	Zero-Role Processes	171
	7.2.2	One-Role Processes	177
	7.2.3	Two-Role Processes	189
	7.2.4	Three-Role Processes	206
		7.2.4.1 Three-Role Processes with two nominal Complem	ents207
		7.2.4.2 Three-Role Processes with Subject-and-Predicate	Complements
		209	
		7.2.4.3 Three-Role Process with different units as Comple	ments216
		7.2.4.4 أفعال التحويل (Afʻālu al-taḥwīl) (Verbs of causing cha	ange) as three-
		role Processes	220
		7.2.4.5 Overtly unrealized Participant Roles in three-role	Processes .229
	7.2.5	Four-Role Processes	232
7.3	Conclu	usion	237
CHA	APTER	8: CONCLUSION	240
8.1	Introdu	uction	240
8.2	Resear	rch Major Findings	240
	8.2.1	The First Research Ouestion	241

		8.2.1.1	The simple nominal clause with a single-item Compleme	nt241
		8.2.1.2	The simple nominal clause with a phrasal Complement	241
		8.2.1.3	The simple nominal clause with a clausal Complement	243
	8.2.2	The Seco	ond Research Question	244
	8.2.3	The Thin	rd Research Question	246
		8.2.3.1	Zero-Role Processes	247
		8.2.3.2	One-Role Processes	247
		8.2.3.3	Two-Role Processes	249
		8.2.3.4	Three-Role Processes	250
		8.2.3.5	Four-Role Processes	254
8.3	Final C	Conclusion	1	255
8.4	Contrib	outions of	the Study	256
8.5	Implica	ations of t	he Study	258
8.6	Directi	ons for Fu	urther Research	259
REF	TEREN(CES		263
LIS	Γ OF PU	JBLICAT	TIONS AND PAPERS PRESENTED	274
App	endix A:	Re-expre	ession Tests	275
Ann	endix B	Extracted	Examples from the Selected Newspapers	279

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2.1: The analysis of a Chinese causative influential process
Figure 2.2: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction
Figure 2.3: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction with two processes forming an action-and-purpose logico–semantic relationship (Wei, 2014, p. 55)29
Figure 2.4: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction expressing description (Wei, 2014, p. 56).
Figure 2.5: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction expressing existenc (Wei, 2014, p. 56)
Figure 2.6: Functional analysis of a true S-P P structure (Wei, 2017, p. 957)3
Figure 2.7: The syntactic analysis of Let's construction in English
Figure 3.1: The components and their outputs in a systemic functional grammar (Fawcett 2008, p. 41)
Figure 3.2: A very small systemic functional grammar for the English clause (Fawcett 2008, p. 93)
Figure 3.3: The clause structure generated from the first selection expression (Fawcett 2008, p. 100)
Figure 3.4: Basic concepts and relationships in the Cardiff Grammar, adapted from (Fawcett, 2008, p. 75)
Figure 3.5: An analysis of a simple clause in the negative information giver (Fawcett 2008, p. 230)
Figure 4.1: Indispensable elements in the nominal clause
Figure 4.2: Indispensable elements in the verbal clause
Figure 4.3: A nominal clause with a nominal Predicate
Figure 4.4: A nominal clause with a verbal clausal Predicate
Figure 4.5: A nominal clause with a nominal clausal Predicate
Figure 4.6: A verbal clause with an overt nominal Subject
Figure 4.7: A verbal clause with a covert Subject

Figure 4.8: Sub-types of nouns in MSA	91
Figure 4.9: Main types of particles in MSA	92
Figure 5.1: The stages followed to conduct the study	111
Figure 6.1: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by one (ngp)	
Figure 6.2: Functional analysis of another NCl where the Complement is filled b item (ngp)	
Figure 6.3: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a qlgp	117
Figure 6.4: Functional analysis of another NCl where the Complement is filled by a (passive participle)	
Figure 6.5: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a pexpress a 'relational locational' meaning	
Figure 6.6: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a quexpress a 'relational directional' meaning	
Figure 6.7: Functional analysis of a NCl where the phrasal Complement is an indenge qualified by an indefinite qlgp	
Figure 6.8: Functional analysis of a NCl where the phrasal Complement is an indenoun qualified by a definite noun	
Figure 6.9: Functional analysis of a NCl where the phrasal Complement is a definite qualified by a definite adjective.	
Figure 6.10: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject is a ngp qualified by ar noun	
Figure 6.11: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by modified by two pgps	
Figure 6.12: Functional analysis of a NCl with two co-ordinated pgps as an Adjunc	rt. 129
Figure 6.13: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is a ngp qualified qlgp and pgp	•
Figure 6.14: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject is filled by a VCl	132
Figure 6.15: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a no clause	

Figure 6.16: Functional analysis of another NCl with a nominal clausal Complement 134
Figure 6.17: Functional analysis of a NCl with a nominal clausal Complement introduced by $\delta(ka'nna)$ (as if)
Figure 6.18: Functional analysis of a NCl with a nominal clausal Complement introduced by $\dot{\psi}$ (anna) (that)
Figure 6.19: Functional analysis of a NCl with a positive verbal clausal Complement141
Figure 6.20: Functional analysis of a NCl with a negative verbal clausal Complement
Figure 6.21: Functional analysis of a NCl wherein the Subject is conflated with the Created
Figure 6.22: Functional analysis of a NCl with a verbal clausal Complement whose Main verb is a one-role Process
Figure 6.23: Functional analysis of a NCl with a verbal clausal Complement whose Main verb is a three-role Process
Figure 6.24: Functional analysis of a NCl where the verbal clausal Complement is introduced by the Auxiliary verb يكون (yakūn) (is)
Figure 6.25: Functional analysis of a NCl where verbal clausal Complement is introduced by the Auxiliary verb صرت (sirta) (became)
Figure 6.26: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject and Complement have a different degree of definiteness
Figure 6.27: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject and Complement are both definite and referential
Figure 6.28: Functional analysis of example (26) when it is reserved
Figure 6.29: Functional analysis of example (27) when it is reversed
Figure 6.30: Functional analysis of a NCl where reversibility is optional
Figure 6.31: Functional analysis of a NCl where reversibility is obligatory
Figure 6.32: Functional analysis of another NCl where reversibility is obligatory159
Figure 6.33: Functional analysis of a NCl where ضمير الفصل (ḍamīr al-faṣl) (separation pronoun) is optional

Figure 6.34: Functional analysis of a NCl where ضميرالفصل (ḍamīr al-faṣl) (separation pronoun) is obligatory
Figure 6.35: Functional analysis of another NCl where ضميرالفصل (damīr al-faṣl) ضميرالفصل (separation) is obligatory
Figure 7.1: Functional analysis of an 'environmental' Process with Affected as the only PR
Figure 7.2: Functional analysis of another 'environmental' one-role Process that expresses happening
Figure 7.3: Functional analysis of an 'environmental' Process with Agent and Affected as the PRs
Figure 7.4: Functional analysis of another 'environmental' two-role Process that expresses doing
Figure 7.5: Functional analysis of an 'influential' Process with Phenomenon as the only PR
Figure 7.6: Functional analysis of another one-role 'influential' Process
Figure 7.7: Functional analysis of a 'material action' Process with Agent as the only PR
Figure 7.8: Functional analysis of another 'Agent only' Process
Figure 7.9: Functional analysis of a 'material action' Process with Affected as the only PR
Figure 7.10: Functional analysis of another 'Affected only' Process
Figure 7.11: Functional analysis of an ergative structure where the Subject is conflated with the Carrier
Figure 7.12: Functional analysis of an ergative structure where the Subject is conflated with the Affected
Figure 7.13: Functional analysis of a 'Carrier only' Process
Figure 7.14: Functional analysis of a 'Created only' Process
Figure 7.15: Functional analysis of a two-role 'material action' Process
Figure 7.16: Functional analysis of a two-role 'relational attributive' Process

Figure 7.17: Functional analysis of a 'relation possessive' Process with a covert Subject
Figure 7.18: Functional analysis of a 'relational directional' Process with a suffixed Subject
Figure 7.19: Functional analysis of a 'material social' Process
Figure 7.20: Functional analysis of a 'mental perception' Process where the Complement is filled by a pgp
Figure 7.21: Functional analysis of a 'relational Process where a qlgp196
Figure 7.22: Functional analysis of a two-role 'mental cognition' Process wherein the Complement is filled by a non-finite clause
Figure 7.23: Functional analysis of a 'mental emotion' Process whose Complement is filled by an event noun
Figure 7.24: Functional analysis of a 'relational location' Process with a covert Complement
Figure 7.25: Functional analysis of a 'material social' Process with a covert Complement 201
Figure 7.26: Functional analysis of an ergative structure made transitive204
Figure 7.27: Functional analysis of another ergative structure made transitive205
Figure 7.28: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational possessive' Process208
Figure 7.29: Functional analysis of another three-role 'relational possessive' Process 208
Figure 7.30: Functional analysis of a 'mental cognition' Process as a three-role Process with two Complements
Figure 7.31: Functional analysis of a two-role 'mental cognition' Process whose Complement is introduced by the Binder أنَّ (anna) (that)
Figure 7.32: Functional analysis of a 'mental perception' Process
Figure 7.33: Functional analysis of عرف ('arafa) (knew) as a 'mental perception' Process
Figure 7.34: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational possessive' Process with a pgp filling the second Complement

Figure 7.35: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational attributive' Process whose second Complement is filled by a pgp
Figure 7.36: Functional analysis of a three-role 'mental communication' Process with a pgp filling the first Complement
Figure 7.37: Functional analysis of the verb 'make' as a three-role 'relational attributive' Process
Figure 7.38: Another functional analysis of 'make' as a 'relational attributive' Process with two Complements
Figure 7.39: Functional analysis of the verb 'make' as a three-role 'influential' Process
Figure 7.40: Functional analysis of 'make' as a three-role 'influential' Process with two Complements
Figure 7.41: Functional analysis of an 'influential' Process with a nominal event as a Complement
Figure 7.42: Functional analysis of an 'influential' Process with a non-finite verbal clause as the Complement
Figure 7.43: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational directional' Process whose second Complement is covert
Figure 7.44: Functional analysis of a 'mental communication' Process whose first Complement is covert
Figure 7.45: Functional analysis of a four-role 'mental communication' Process234
Figure 7.46: Functional analysis of three-role 'mental communication' Process when followed by $\dot{\psi}$ (anna) (that)

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3.1: Elements of the clause in English, adapted from (Fawcett, 2008, p. 249)49
Table 3.2: The system network for 'action' Processes with PR configurations
Table 3.3: The system network for 'relational' Processes with PR configurations58
Table 3.4: The system network for 'mental' Processes with the configurations of PRs 61
Table 3.5: The system network for 'environmental' Processes with the configurations of PRs
Table 3.6: The system network for 'influential' Processes with PR configurations64
Table 3.7: The system network for 'event-relating' Processes with PR configurations .65
Table 4.1: Imperfect verb mode cases, adapted from (Versteegh, 1997a, p. 79)
Table 5.1: Names of the newspapers selected as the source of data
Table 5.2: Arabic consonants ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012)103
Table 5.3: Arabic vowels ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012)
Table 5.4: Arabic long vowels ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012)
Table 5.5: Arabic diphthongs ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012)

LIST OF SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

General Term Abbreviations

ALA : American Library Association

Arti : Article

CA : Cardiff Grammar

Cl : Clause

COCA : Colloquial Spoken Arabic

CSA : Corpus of Contemporary American English

Edit : Editorial

FSP : Functional Sentence Perspective

genclr genitive cluster

GB : Government and Binding

hpnclr : human proper name cluster

LC : Library of Congress

MP : Minimalist Program

MSA : Modern Standard Arabic

NLG Natural Language Generation

NCl : Nominal Clause

N Noun

ngp : noun group

NP : Noun Phrase

pgp : prepositional group

qlgp : qualitative group

qtgp : quantity group

SE : Standard English

SG Sydney Grammar

SFG Systemic Functional Grammar

SFL : Systemic Functional Linguistics

TAGs : Traditional Arab Grammarians

TG : Transformational Generative

TP : Tense Phrase

VCl : Verbal Clause

VP : Verbal Phrase

Syntactic Functions

A : Adjunct

a : apex

X Auxiliary

XEx Auxiliary Extension

B : Binder

C : Complement

cv : completive

dd : deictic determiner

E : Ender

F : Formulaic

h : head

I : Infinitive

L : Let

& Linker

M : Main Verb

MEx Main Verb Extension

m : modifier

N : Negator

O : Operator

Prle : Particle

P : Predicate

p : preposition

q : qualifier

qd : quantifying determiner

v selector (always of)

S : Subject

SEx : Subject Extension

St : Starter

V : Vocative

Semantic Functions

Af : Affected

Af-Ca : Affected-Carrier

Af-Cog : Affected-Cognizant

Af-Des : Affected-Destination

Af-Em : Affected-Emoter

Af-Pa : Affected-Path

Af-Perc : Affected-Perceiver

Af-Pos : Affected-Possessed

Af-So : Affected-Source

Ag : Agent

Ag-Ca : Agent-Carrie

Ag-Cog : Agent-Cognizant

At : Attribute

Ca : Carrier

CR : Circumstantial Role

Cog : Cognizant

Cre : Created

Cre-Ph : Created-Phenomenon

Des : Destination

Em : Emoter

Loc : Location

Mtch : Matchee

PR : Participant Role

Pa Path

Perc : Perceiver

Ph : Phenomenon

Pos : Possessed

Pro : Process

PrEx : Process Extension

Ra : Range

So : Source

Glossing Rules

ACC : Accusative

DU : Dual

F : Feminine

1 : First person

FUT : Future

GEN : Genitive

IPF : Imperfective

JUS : Jussive

M : Masculine

NOM : Nominative

OBJ : Object

PST Past

PTCP Participle

PRF : Perfective

PL : Plural

POSS : Possessive

PRS : Present

2 : Second person

SG : Singular

SBJ : Subject

SBJV : Subjunctive

3 : Third person

LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix A: Re-expression Tests	275
Appendix B: Extracted Examples from the Selected Newspapers	279

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

1.1 Background of the Study

The study of the syntactic structures of language has usually attracted grammarians' attention attempting to develop a general linguistic theory that could describe language and account for problematic issues in language structures. Halliday's theory of Systemic Functional Grammar (SFG henceforth) is thus said to be a comprehensive 'general linguistic theory' as it has made outstanding contributions to the description of several languages (Mwinlaaru & Xuan, 2016). This theory has led to the production of different language descriptions, which, in turn, are used in the various areas of applied linguistics. Inspired by Halliday's Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL henceforth) and the demand for 'a general linguistics theory', Robin Fawcett (2000, 2008) has developed an SFG version known as the Cardiff Grammar model (CG), which he regards as an extension and simplification of Halliday's the Sydney Grammar (SG).

However, Fawcett (2000) has argued that even though Halliday's earlier work 'Categories of the Theory of Grammar' (1961, 1976) was essentially a theory of syntax, Halliday's later work 'Introduction to Functional Grammar' (1985) did not present details to account for the syntax in a language. Fawcett (2000) has observed that the full representation of structure at the level of form has not been found anywhere, either in the changes made to the theory by Halliday and his colleagues or in the later works of the researchers who adopted this model for language description. In addition, based on prioritizing the meaning of a language over its form, which is the essence of SFG, researchers have focused on describing the semantic functions of a language rather than its syntactic aspects (e.g. Bardi, 2008; Caffarel et al., 2004; Kumar, 2009; Rose, 2004; Steiner & Teich, 2004; Tam, 2004; Thai, 2004). As a result, Fawcett (2000, 2005, 2008) emphasizes the urgent need to develop a theory of syntax that could provide a full insightful functional representation of clause structure in modern SFG, especially if such

a syntactic representation is lacking in the SFG model of Halliday. Fawcett (2008, p. 79) thus utilizes the tree diagram to represent and match the syntax and semantics of the English clause in SFG. This theory is claimed to offer a functional syntactic description that could complete the semantic account of the simple clause in any language. In other words, the study is based on Fawcett's claim that his theory of the CG can be used to describe the syntactic properties of a certain language and match them with its semantic properties.

Regarding Arabic, the study of Arabic structure has attracted the attention of traditional grammarians (e.g. al-Fārisī, 1982; Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996; Ibn Hishām, 1991; Ibn Jinnī, 1957; Ibn Madā', 1947; Ibn Ya'īsh, n.d.; Sībawayh, 1988) as well as modern linguists (e.g. Abdul-Fattah, 2010; Abu-Mansour, 1986; Abunowara, 1996; Al-Aqarbeh & Al-Sarayreh, 2017; Alazzawie, 2016; Ali Fakih, 2014; Aziz, 1988a; Badawi et al., 2016; Bahloul, 2008; Bakir, 1979; Bardi, 2008; Benmamoun, 2000, 2008; Fassi Fehri, 1993). However, in observing the literature on Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), little work has been carried out to describe the Arabic language at the level of form using the SFG concepts. Due to the lack of the syntactic theory in the model of SFG, research on MSA has given central attention to the representation of language at the level of meaning in the different fields of language, notably discourse (Al-Jayrudy, 2011; Aziz, 1988a; Kamel, 2006; Noor et al., 2015; Potter, 2016), educational linguistics (Abunowara, 1996) and translation (Abdul-Fattah, 2010; Mohammed, 2011; Obiedat, 1994). Moreover, even those works that adopted SFG for the Arabic systemic typology and description, (e.g. Abu-Mansour, 1986; Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008), were devoted to describing the semantic system networks of Transitivity, Mood, and Theme irrespective of the syntactic aspects. Consequently, a study is needed to bridge the gap that exists regarding matching the syntactic properties with the semantic features of the simple clause structure in MSA.

In investigating a phenomenon in syntax, Fawcett (2000, 2008) and Halliday and Matthiessen (2004, 2014) have focused on the study of the clause, which is regarded as the central processing unit. Therefore, this study attempts to investigate the syntactic properties of the simple clause in MSA and relate them to the semantic aspects of the system network of Transitivity in light of the Cardiff Grammar. In other words, it analyzes the syntactic features of the two types of the simple clause in MSA, namely the simple nominal clause (NCl) and the simple verbal clause (VCl), and matches them with the semantic features of Transitivity system network because Transitivity plays a key role in getting a full syntactic analysis of the clause (Fontaine, 2008; Neale, 2002). The semantic analysis of the Transitivity system network serves as the base for the clause syntactic analysis. That is because identifying the semantic roles, such as Agent and Affected, leads to recognizing the clause elements of Subject and Complement. The study uses the tree diagram to develop a comprehensive diagrammatic functional representation and test the CG's applicability to MSA. Taking into consideration the insightful concepts of SFG and Fawcett's modern theory of syntax, this work hopefully attempts to make considerable theoretical and empirical contributions not only to the functional syntactic representation of MSA, but also to the development of SFL in general, and the CG model in particular as a functionally applicable model for describing languages other than English.

1.2 Statement of the Study Problem

SFG has been utilized as an applicable framework in different fields and domains, i.e., educational linguistics, stylistics, computational linguistics, and speech pathology (Butler, 2003a). Apart from English, Mwinlaaru and Xuan (2016, p. 8) have pointed out that SFG has been applied successfully for the description of different languages, such as Arabic (Bardi, 2008), Bajjika (Kumar, 2009), Mandarin (Tam, 2004), French (Caffarel et al., 2004), German (Steiner & Teich, 2004), Oko (Akerejola, 2005), Pitjantjatjara (Rose,

2004), Spanish (Quiroz, 2008); Quiroz and Martin (2013), Tagalog (Martin, 2004), Telugu (Prakasam, 2004), Thai (Patpong, 2006), and Japanese (Teruya, 1998, 2007).

However, for research interested in MSA's syntactic features, there is still a scholarly need to account for the syntactic representation of the simple clause with reference to the CG, which has not been applied before either for its systemic semantic description or its syntactic description. Several works have focused on the analysis of the structural nature of the Arabic clause, but these studies have been carried out with reference to the Chomskyan approach (e.g. Abdel-Hafiz, 2005; Al-Aqarbeh & Al-Sarayreh, 2017; Alazzawie, 2016; Alduais, 2012; Ali, 2015; Anshen & Schreiber, 1968; Bakir, 1979; Fassi Fehri, 1993; Shlonsky, 1997). They have been concerned with presenting the underlying syntactic structure of Arabic clauses at the level of form at the expense of its semantic features. On the other hand, the research that adopted the SFG for the description of MSA has been found inadequate since the focus was mainly on the language aspects at the level of meaning, i.e., Transitivity, Mood, and Theme (e.g. Abu-Mansour, 1986; Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008).

Although the study of Bardi (2008) provides a comprehensive account of the systemic typology of Arabic from the lexicogrammatical and functional levels, using Halliday's SFG, this account still needs to be viewed and oriented from a more syntactic perspective via the tree diagram. In other words, the functional representation of the clause structure through the use of the tree diagram is lacking in the previous studies that generally investigated MSA in light of Halliday's SFG (i.e., Abu-Mansour, 1986; Abunowara, 1996; Al-Jayrudy, 2011; Aziz, 1988a; Bardi, 2008; Noor et al., 2015; Obiedat, 1994). As a response to the need for areal representativeness of Arabic syntactic and semantic description within SFL, this study, therefore, is based on the assumption made by Fawcett that the syntactic and semantic features of a language, i.e, MSA, can be better analyzed

and accounted for within the framework of the CG. Consequently, the current study is hoped to be the first of its kind because it aims at matching the syntactic properties of the simple clause elements with the semantic ones in MSA by using the tree diagram. Not only will the study complement the other studies that described Arabic language typology within SFG (Abu-Mansour, 1986; Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008), but also it will hopefully fill the gap concerning the functional syntactic representation of the Arabic language.

1.3 Objectives of the Study

The main purpose of the current study is to analyze the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple clause in Modern Standard Arabic by adopting the Cardiff Grammar approach. It attempts to identify the syntactic features of both simple nominal and simple verbal clauses in MSA and match them with the semantic features of the Transitivity system network. It also investigates the phenomenon of reversibility in the simple nominal verbless clause. Here, Transitivity is used as a semantic means with which the functional syntactic analysis of each clause is matched to ensure a better description of the clause properties. In a nutshell, this main aim could be further sub-divided into three objectives.

- To identify the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple nominal clause in MSA within the Cardiff Grammar.
- To examine how reversibility is manifested in the simple nominal verbless clause following the CG.
- To identify the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple verbal clause in MSA within the CG

1.4 Research Questions

To achieve the stated objectives, the following questions need to be answered.

- 1) What are the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple nominal clause in MSA within the CG?
- 2) How is reversibility manifested in the simple nominal verbless clause following the CG?
- 3) What are the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple verbal clause in MSA within the CG?

1.5 Significance of the Study

Mwinlaaru and Xuan (2016) have observed that solving linguistic problems can be done by utilizing different language descriptions. In other words, having significant implications for how language could be better learned is one of the central concerns that grammarians and syntacticians have always sought in their research. Starting from such facts, this study could be significant for the following reasons.

From what has been said above regarding language learnability, the findings of this study could hopefully be made use of by the learners who are interested in learning MSA by applying such findings in the formal and informal contexts of community life. In other words, since the study intends to represent how the syntactic features of MSA are related to the semantic properties of Transitivity, the findings could provide them with the proper mechanisms that help them better interpret and produce clauses in the Arabic language.

The current study's findings are hopefully to help translators, whether native Arabic or non-native Arabic translators, better understand the underlying structures of Arabic clauses to demonstrate better translations of the texts. As a result, the translators could skillfully reflect on applying such insightful syntactic descriptions and incorporate them into semantic discourse interpretations.

Unlike the SG, the CG approach is applied to a limited number of languages, such as English, Spanish, Chinese, and Japanese. Therefore, this study and its findings are likely to encourage other scholars to describe the structures of any other language within the CG framework and compare their descriptive outputs with those in other similar or different languages. These multilingual studies would help shed more light on the syntactic and semantic similarities and differences across languages and provide, in return, critical findings of the possibility of this model to describe the functions of these languages as the SG has done. This would enhance the 'language typology' as a method of linguistic inquiry to explore cross-linguistic diversity and genetic relationships among languages (Kashyap, 2019, p. 767)

In reviewing the studies investigating Arabic in the CG, this study is the first of its kind and a pioneer for other studies in the sense that it contributes to a better understanding of the depth and comprehensiveness of MSA syntax and semantics through the tree diagram within the CG framework. That is, the functional diagrammatic representation of the NCls and VCls would provide comprehensive accounts of MSA structures at the levels of form and meaning. As a result, it is hoped that this study would be the starting point for more studies to be conducted employing the CG approach to investigate other linguistic phenomena in MSA.

1.6 Limitations of the Study

In carrying out a study in any field, there are always limitations that must be pointed out. First, the study restricts itself to examining the syntactic and semantic features of the simple clause in MSA, which means that complex clauses joined by co-ordinating conjunctions are not included here. Second, since the study is interested in relating the syntactic features to the semantic aspects of the simple clause in MSA, the Experiential metafunction represented by the system network of Transitivity is selected. Therefore,

neither the other metafunctions of Mood and Theme nor the contextualization aspects will be discussed in the current study, and the study pays no attention to the clause aspects from above. However, there might sometimes be references to them if they have a straightforward role in interpreting the analysis itself. Third, the study confines itself to the examples and instances of MSA. The other varieties of Arabic, Classical Arabic and Colloquial Spoken Arabic, are not included throughout the study. Thus, the instances found to belong to Colloquial Spoken Arabic or Classical Arabic will be excluded from the analysis even if they are simple clauses. Fourth, the study is limited to analyzing the structure of the simple clause, so the underlying internal structure of phrases/groups will not be given attention. Nevertheless, the underlying structure of specific phrases might be discussed and functionally represented, only if necessary. Fifth, the study focuses only on the simple clause in the form of 'information giver', particularly 'simple giver' (traditionally known as declarative sentences). As a result, 'information seeker' (traditionally known as Yes-No questions and Wh-question), exclamation, and proposals for action (known as directives, requests, suggestions, permissions, agreements, etc.) are not in the scope of this study. Finally, the study is restricted to examining written clauses selected from two registers only in newspapers (editorials and articles).

1.7 Terminology and Definitions

There are essential terms whose definitions must be introduced before moving on to the discussion and analysis:

- 1. The Cardiff Grammar: "It is a model of language that finds its basis in Systemic Functional Linguistics and has grown from the work of a number of scholars at Cardiff University" (Neale, 2017, p. 182).
- 2. الجملة الأسمية (al-jumlatu al-ismiyyah) (The nominal clause): That clause whose initial word is a noun (al- Sāmarrāī, 2007; Ibn Hishām, 1991).

- 3. الجملة الفعلية (al-jumlatu al-fi 'liyyah) (The verbal clause): That clause whose initial word is a verb (al- Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Ibn Hishām, 1991).
- 4. Transitivity: "The range of types of process that it is possible to express through the language concerned and the participants in each of those types of process" (Fawcett, 2005, p. 10).
- 5. Process: "The pivotal element in the semantic unit of the situation whereas the Main Verb is the pivotal element in the syntactic unit of the clause" (Fawcett, 2008, p. 48). Therefore, the processes are classified into different types and sub-types based on the meaning they express, such as 'material' Processes, 'mental' Processes, 'relational' Processes, etc.
- 6. Participant Role: "A role which we expect to occur in the clause, as a result of knowing what the Process is" (Fawcett, 2008, p. 138). It could be the Agent in the 'material' Processes, the Carrier in the 'relational' Processes, the Emoter in the 'mental emotion' Processes, etc.
- 7. Circumstantial Role: "Any element that expresses an experiential meaning and is not a Process, a Participant Role or an Auxiliary" (Fawcett, 2008, p. 167). It is realized as the Adjunct in terms of syntax, i.e., the level of form.
- 8. Ergativity: "A view of the process in which the action is presented without mentioning the external agency that causes the event to happen, such as *The glass broke*" (Butler, 2003a, p. 386).
- 9. المبتدأ (al-mubtada') (Topic/Subject): the initial definite noun in the nominal clause which needs خبر (khabar) (Predicate /Complement).
- 10. الخبر (al-khabar) (Predicate/Complement): the element that tells a piece of information about المبتدأ (al-mubtada) (Topic/Subject) in the nominal clause.

- 11. المضاف والمضاف اليه (al-muḍāf wa al-muḍāf ilayh) (the possessed and possessor): a possessive phrase construction in which an indefinite noun is made definite by annexing it to another definite noun or a possessive pronoun (Marogy, 2010).
- 12. Word case endings: "The short word-final vowel sound that indicates its function and its relationship with other words in the sentence" (Ryding, 2005, pp. 165-166).
- 13. Verb mode: "refers to verb categories, such as indicative, subjunctive, and jussive (imperative)" (Ryding, 2005, p. 53).

1.8 Overview of the Study

The study is organized into eight chapters, each of which is devoted to presenting an interdependent part that contributes to the development of the whole study. Chapter 1 intends to offer a comprehensive background of the study so that the research gap and the need for such a study are highlighted clearly. The objectives are also introduced to set up the research questions. At the end of this chapter, the significance and limitations of the study are tackled so that a straightforward idea of the study is obtained.

Following this chapter, Chapter 2 offers an overview of the previous research that explores the features of the simple clause in MSA from different theoretical approaches. It summarizes the main contributions relevant to the simple Arabic clause by revealing the dearth of literature on matching the syntactic features with the semantic ones. This brief overview serves to highlight the theoretical gap and the need for the current study.

Chapters 3 and 4 constitute extensions of the theoretical background of the study presented in Chapter 2. In Chapter 3, the researcher explains Systemic Functional Linguistics, focusing on the Cardiff Grammar as the model upon which the current study is based. It first discusses Hallidayan's most prominent principles and concepts that make up his linguistic theory. It then includes a detailed discussion of the CG approach as a model developed by Fawcett for the functional syntax in SFL. It presents the principal

categories and the basic relationships that hold these categories together. Then, the syntax of the clause elements is given to show how they are functionally labeled and matched with the other semantics roles. The researcher does not forget to include in this chapter Transitivity in terms of the main Process types and Participant Role configurations needed for the semantic analysis.

Similarly, Chapter 4 provides a description of the Arabic syntax, i.e., MSA. This chapter first presents a brief explanation of the three varieties of the Arabic language. Then, a short introduction to the emergence of Arabic grammar is provided, represented by the most salient features of the three schools of Arabic grammar. The chapter next discusses the clause structure in MSA with a central focus on what composes a well-formed clause. Finally, it concludes with a considerable discussion of the three-word classes in MSA, namely nouns, verbs, and particles.

Chapter 5 provides considerable details concerning the methodology adopted to carry out this study. It sheds light on the framework utilized to conduct this study. It also explains how the data were selected, described, and analyzed. This chapter serves as the guidelines that set up the analytical part of the study since it discusses the procedures undertaken to describe the syntactic and semantic analysis of the selected data.

Chapter 6 is the first step toward answering the research questions. It provides the analysis and results of the first two research questions concerned with the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple nominal clause in MSA. It includes a functional representation of various patterns of the simple nominal clause structures based on the Predicate structure. It also provides a functional account of the issue of reversibility in simple nominal verbless clauses as the second research question.

Chapter 7 offers answers to the last research question that investigates the syntactic and semantic features of the simple verbal clause in MSA. It offers a functional discussion of the simple verbal clause based on its classification according to the number of Complements predicted by Processes in MSA. It shows how the syntactic features of the elements in the simple verbal clause are conflated with the semantic features of the Transitivity system network.

Chapter 8 intends to summarize the major conclusions and findings drawn from the functional analysis of the data of this study. It is hoped that these conclusions bridge the gap concerning matching the syntactic properties of the simple clause in MSA with the semantic features via the tree diagram. It finally offers the study's main contributions, implications, and proposed recommendations for further research.

1.9 Conclusion

This chapter has provided an overall view of the whole study by presenting its background and the motive behind conducting this research. It highlights the statement of the study problem that makes it an urgent scholarly need to bridge or narrow the gap existing in matching the syntactic properties with semantic features of the simple clause in MSA. It outlines the research questions attempted to be answered and offers brief definitions of the most important terms. Finally, it has concluded with the limitations that the study could not cover.

The next chapter offers a critical review of the literature related to studying the simple clause in MSA from different linguistic approaches. It summarizes the main contributions made to analyzing the syntactic features of both nominal and verbal clauses in MSA. Then, it shows the very little body of literature done in studying the syntactic features of the simple nominal and verbal clauses within the SFG so that the motive behind the current study is set out.

CHAPTER 2: LITERATURE REVIEW

2.1 Introduction

This chapter is concerned with presenting a review of the studies carried out to examine the syntactic properties of the simple clause in MSA and those done to study their semantic features of Transitivity. To obtain a comprehensive view, it is divided into three sections. Section 2.2 briefly discusses the studies that have been carried out to describe clause structure in MSA in light of the Chomskyan approach. Section 2.3 presents the studies that tackle the Arabic clause structure with reference to the Arabic grammatical tradition. Section 2.4 has two parts the first of which is concerned with discussing the works done to describe MSA within the SFG. The second part is devoted to presenting the studies that utilize the Cardiff Grammar approach in analyzing various syntactic phenomena in languages. Importantly, it should be stated that the current study has excluded the studies that used SFG to analyze the different colloquial varieties of Arabic and those studies that adopted SFL for the description of languages other than MSA. This chapter is significant since not only does it show how different this study is from other previous relevant studies, but it also offers the research gap that needs to be bridged through the current study.

2.2 Research within the Chomskyan Approach

In reviewing the relevant literature dealing with the syntactic aspects of the simple clause in MSA, it has been found that most of the studies have adopted Chomsky's generative theory, i.e., Government and Binding (GB), Transformational Generative theory (TG), and Minimalist Program (MP) (e.g. Abdel-Hafiz, 2005; Al-Aqarbeh & Al-Sarayreh, 2017; Al-Balushi, 2012; Alazzawie, 2016; Alduais, 2012; Ali, 2015; Anshen & Schreiber, 1968; Bakir, 1979; Fassi Fehri, 1993; Mohamed, 2013; Shlonsky, 1997). The researchers adopting this approach have maintained the traditional classification of Arabic clauses into nominal and verbal clauses, adding another type of clause known as

the equational or verbless clause, which lacks the verb in its structure. For instance, in an earlier attempt to outline the Arabic clause types with reference to TG, Anshen and Schreiber (1968) advocate a tripartite division of Arabic clauses based on two variables: verbal/nominal and equative/non-equative. The first type is the nominal non-equative clause which starts with a noun followed by a verb (SVO). The second type is the verbal non-equative clause which begins with a verb followed by the subject (VSO), and the last type is called the equative clause, which does not include any verb in its structure.

Fassi Fehri (1993) also analyses the internal structure of words and clauses in MSA with a focus on providing a specific theory of Arabic typology. He argues that MSA is an unmarked VSO language, considering SVO structure another alternative pattern. The nominal clause is viewed as a verbless structure devoid of a verb or copula in its surface structure. In another study by Bakir (1979), the VSO pattern is regarded as the basic word order from which certain displacement transformational generative rules derive other patterns, such as VOS and SVO. The equational clause is also proposed as the clause that is composed of Topic-Comment. In a comparative study between Hebrew, Palestinian dialect, and MSA, Shlonsky (1997) emphasizes the VSO pattern as the unmarked word order in MSA compared with Hebrew and the Palestinian dialect, which are classified as SVO systems. Alazzawie (2016) is concerned with analyzing the nominal clause, particularly the verbless copula clause with a nominal or adjectival predicate in MSA within the Minimalist Program of Merge, Move and Agree principles. In this study, a distinction is made between the verbal copula clause, which includes verb to be کان (kāna) (was), and the verbless copula clause or predicative clause, which lacks the overt copular verb, and the equative clause, which includes ضمير (damīr al-faṣl) (separation pronoun) that separates the Subject from its Predicate. However, being a copular or verbless clauses does not mean that they do not have the potential to be equational.

In another contrastive study attempting to outline Arabic clause types, Alduais (2012) utilizes the Transformational Generative Grammar approach to compare the simple clause in MSA and Standard English (SE). The data consist of 1000 simple clauses, 500 simple clauses from each language under investigation. It is concluded that MSA is a free-word-order language, whereas SE is fixed-word-order. He argues for four types of clauses in MSA. The first type is the nominal clause that starts with a noun followed by a verb. The second type is the verbal clause formed when the first type is inverted allowing the verb to come first, followed by a subject without any change in the elements of the clause, see example (2). According to Alduais (2012), the third type is the equational or verbless clause that starts with a noun and has no verb at all, as illustrated in example (3) below. The fourth type is the verbal clause that begins with a verb, but if the subject is pre-posted, subject-verb agreement modification must occur, as shown in example (5).

الهدف الخاص كان هدفا نبيلا (1)

al-hadaf-u al-khāṣ-u kāna hadaf-an nabīl-an the aim the particular was aim religious 'The particular aim was religious.' (Alduais, 2012, p. 510)

كان الهدف الخاص هدفا نبيلا (2)

kāna al-hadaf-u al-khāṣ-u hadaf-an nabīl-an was the aim the particular aim religious 'The particular aim was a religious aim.' (Alduais, 2012, p. 511)

الأنسان كائن اجتماعي (3)

al-insān-u kā'in-un ijtimā'ī-un man being social 'Man is a social being.' (Alduais, 2012, p. 513)

قام التلاميذ احتراما للأستاذ (4)

qāma al-tallāmīdh-u iḥtrām-an lil-ustādh-i stood up the pupils respectively to-the teacher 'The pupils stood up respectively for the teacher.' (Alduais, 2012, p. 512)

التلاميذ قاموا احتراما للأستاذ (5)

al-tallāmīdh-u qām-ū iḥtrām-an lil-ustādh-i the pupils stood up respectively to-the teacher 'The pupils stood up respectively for the teacher.' (Alduais, 2012, p. 512)

We argue that the first two types and the last two types are not different types on their own because they could be interpreted either as nominal if starting with a noun or as verbal if starting with a verb. Besides, Alduais (2012) did not pay any attention to the semantic aspects of the clause elements that hold the elements together. His classification was based on the structural sequence of the clause components irrespective of the semantic roles they display.

Other studies have analyzed the syntactic features of the Arabic clause with an aim to examine specific linguistic issues within the Chomskyan approach. For example, Al-Agarbeh and Al-Sarayreh (2017) investigate the clause structure of periphrastic tense structure that contains a fully inflected auxiliary and lexical verb, considering the semantic and morpho-syntactic properties of time and aspect of that clause type. They propose that in the case of the clause that has one TP (Tense Phrase) with two independent nominative subjects (the first is of the matrix clause and the second of the embedded clause), both subjects are assigned the nominative case by Aspect rather than Tense. In another study done by Mohamed (2013), the features of verb-subject agreement are examined in MSA. The study concludes that when the subject is preverbal, there is an agreement in terms of number, person, and gender, but when the subject is postverbal, the agreement is manifested through gender only. Similarly, attempting to analyze subjectverb agreement, Abdel-Hafiz (2005) argues for the superiority of the Subject Hypothesis over the Topicalization Hypothesis. According to the Subject Hypothesis, the noun-first clause is viewed as a Subject while it is construed as a Topic according to the Topicalization Hypothesis. Finally, Al-Khawalda (2012) attempts to prove that the particle ليس (laysa) (not) is an auxiliary verb rather than a negative particle, so he considers the nominal clause as equational that has no verbal predicate in its structure.

Having briefly given an idea about the relevant works done to analyze the clause structure in MSA in light of the Chomskyan framework, it could be observed that the semantic functions of Arabic clauses have not been given any attention. The way to study clause structure and classify its types was grounded in examining the syntactic properties of the elements without giving any importance to the experiential semantic meaning. In addition, adopting only the formal approach to explore the simple clause in MSA has resulted in proposing various types, which could be redundant types that could be grouped either as nominal or as verbal.

2.3 Research within the Arabic Grammatical Tradition

Apart from the Chomskyan approach and its influence, some researchers have focused on analyzing the structural and functional properties of Arabic clauses in light of the Arabic linguistic tradition. Thus, some of these researchers have looked into the Arabic traditional theory for scholarly analysis, borrowing data from the most important classical books in the Arabic tradition. Al-Liheibi (1999), for instance, investigates the syntactic and semantic aspects of the Arabic clauses concerning ellipsis. The study reveals the essential role of the مسند (musnad) (attribute/predicate) and مسنداليه (musnad ilayhi) (attributed/predicated to) in making up and interpreting clauses in Arabic. If one of these elements is covert, it must be assumed in the underlying structure of the clause. Although the study's main aim is ellipsis rather than other clause constructions, these findings thus do not contradict the traditional grammarians' basic conventional rules and principles. Alsuhaibani (2012) also does a study to examine the structure of the verbal clause in Classical Arabic (CA) and MSA with a special focus on the syntactic and semantic issues that relate verbs to Agents. The study shows that syntactic and morphological factors

affect the tense and aspect in Arabic. Furthermore, the verbs themselves indicate the primary tense while the secondary tense is demonstrated by the other elements in clauses: adverbs, particles, and auxiliaries.

In addition, Cantarino (1974) conducts a comprehensive study to analyze the structure of literary Arabic prose, independently of the syntactic forms discussed in the medieval ages. Data are collected from different literary fields and genres: literary prose, fiction, drama, travelogues, and political, historical, and social writings. The findings show insightful meaning-based accounts of the simple nominal and verbal clauses in their affirmative, negative, and interrogative structures. Even though the author states that the study is not based on a certain theoretical background that explains its outcomes, its findings do not go far away from the Arabic traditional syntax.

In another study, Ali (2015) focuses on analyzing the nominal clause, especially the equational or verbless clause. The analysis assumes that الجداء (ibtidā') (inception) is a semantic mode rather than a syntactic operator. The researcher divides the equational clause into four sub-types: a) verbless clause (Subject + Predicate), b) جملة الله (inna's clause), c) جملة الله (zanna's clause), d) and جملة كان (kāna's clause). It is argued that each type has its own syntactic, semantic, and pragmatic considerations that make it different from the other. Surprisingly, the researcher here classifies zanna's clause and kāna's clause as nominal, which are regarded as verbal by some modern linguists (e.g. Alduais, 2012; Bardi, 2008; Cantarino, 1974; Peled, 2009).

Furthermore, by reviewing and comparing the views and principles of some prominent medieval (traditional) grammarians with some studies by modern linguists, Peled (2009) attempts to address the issue of clause types and word-order patterns in Arabic. The study intends to reconsider the dichotomy of the nominal and verbal clauses. Peled (2009) first discusses the principles of the 'āmel theory (governance), presenting the different

arguments raised by traditional grammarians in analyzing and interpreting the sentential elements' case endings. Then he simply says that the absence of traditional grammarians' reference to name the type of clause which is initially introduced by inawāikh al-ibtidā') (inception cancellers) has raised a serious debate. Thus, Peled (2009) argues for a new dichotomy which he claims to offer crucial solutions to the binary division of clause type that classifies the Arabic simple clause into nominal and verbal. Instead of using specific terminology for his clause types, he presents a tripartite division of three clause types: 1) verbal Predicate + Subject, which is equivalent to verbal clause in MSA; 2) Subject + Predicate, which is equivalent to nominal clause; and 3) non-verbal Predicate+ (infinite Subject), which is equivalent to the adverbial/locative clause. To clarify what is meant by the third type, examples (6), (7), and (8) are provided.

(Peled, 2009)

The basic structure of the nominal clause consists of مبتدأ (mubtad') and خبر (khabar) (Topic/Subject + Complement/Predicate). The word considered as the Subject or Topic occurring clause-initially must be definite, as زيدٌ في الدار (Zaydun) in example (6) زيدٌ في الدار (Zaydun fī al-dāri) (Zayd is at home). In case the definite noun occurs clause-finally as in example (7) في الدار زيدٌ (fī al-dāri Zaydun) (At home is Zayd), this structure is treated as the inversion of the basic form structure of example (6) Zaydun fī al-dāri (Zayd is at

home) (Sībawayh, 1988). According to Peled (2009), the third type of clause, as illustrated in example (8), is needed in a structure where the first initial word is a nonverbal predicate, i.e., an adverbial phrase, and the second word is indefinite. This structure displays an obligatory Predicate + Subject order. His analysis stems from the fact that unlike the possibility of the inversion made to the clause in example (6), an inverted form of (8) في الدار رجلٌ (fī al-dāri rajulun) (At home is a man) is not unacceptable, i.e., رجلاً في (rajulun fī al-dāri) (A man is at home). That is because of the indefiniteness of the second word رجلاً (rajulun) (a man), which requires khabar (Predicate) to be obligatorily pre-posed. It seems that Peled (2009) implicitly advocates the third clause type (al-jumlatu al-zarfiyyah) (adverbial clause) proposed by the traditional grammarians al-Fārisī (1982) and Ibn Hishām (1991) even though he says this type remains marginal in the Arabic tradition. So, the third type shown in example (8) is redundant, and the semantic aspects of the simple clause are again ignored. That is because such a structure is constrained by other pragmatic thematic and synaptic reasons, and so the inversion of example (8) is possible under certain pragmatic factors (Mohammad, 2000), see Chapter 6, Section 6.3.

Drawing upon the previous studies, it could be argued that neither the syntactic features nor the semantic ones have been equally given detailed discussion when analyzing the simple clause in MSA. While some studies investigate the syntactic aspects of one type of Arabic clause (i.e., Al-Liheibi, 1999; Ali, 2015; Alsuhaibani, 2012), the other studies that describe both clause types fail to provide a comprehensive account of how the semantic features are associated with the syntactic ones.

2.4 Research within Systemic Functional Grammar

2.4.1 Research within Halliday's Sydney Grammar

The description of Halliday (1985) of the English language seems to have served as a model for more work to be done on other languages. Butler (2003a, p. 157) points out that SFL has been proven to be an applicable framework used for the description of different languages in relation to various fields, such as educational linguistics (Gradin, 2011), stylistics (e.g. Lukin, 2015; Mwinlaaru, 2014; Simpson, 2004), computational linguistics (e.g. Bateman, 1997; Fawcett, 1993; Fawcett et al., 1996; O'Donnell & Bateman, 2005; Teich, 1999), speech pathology, etc. In addition, SFL has also been applied successfully for the typology and description of different languages, such as Arabic (Bardi, 2008), Bajjika (Kumar, 2009), Mandarin (Tam, 2004), French (Caffarel et al., 2004), German (Steiner & Teich, 2004), Oko (Akerejola, 2005), Pitjantjatjara (Rose, 2004), Spanish (Quiroz, 2008; Quiroz & Martin, 2013), Tagalog (Martin, 2004), Japanese (Teruya, 1998, 2007), Telugu (Prakasam, 2004), and Thai (Patpong, 2006).

However, no work has been found to discuss the syntactic properties of Arabic clause structure and match them with the semantic features within SFG. Studies following the SFG have focused only on the semantic properties of the Arabic language in different domains other than syntax, for instance, discourse (Al-Jayrudy, 2011; Aziz, 1988a; Kamel, 2006; Noor et al., 2015; Potter, 2016), educational linguistics (Abunowara, 1996), and translation (Abdul-Fattah, 2010; Mohammed, 2011; Obiedat, 1994). Therefore, these studies are not discussed as a part of the literature review because they are irrelevant to the study's questions. Nor are the studies that adopted SFG for the description of colloquial Arabic or other foreign languages. The studies interested in describing MSA in the SFG framework have not given any considerable attention to matching the components of the simple clause at the level of form with those at the level of meaning via the tree diagram (Abu-Mansour, 1986; Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008).

An early study conducted by Abu-Mansour (1986) centers on analyzing the basic syntactic structure of the clause in MSA and establishing Traditional Arab Grammarians (TAGs) as functionalists. He adopts the Prague School Functional three-level approach that interprets the clause in terms of three levels: the grammatical level, the semantic level, and the Functional Sentence Perspective (FSP). The data are collected from three sources: a) examples composed by the researcher himself, b) examples from a play called (al-Sultan al-Ḥā'ir), translated as The Sultan's Dilemma, written by Tawfiq السلطان الحائر Al-Hakīmī, and c) examples from the Quran. The structure VSO is regarded as the basic unmarked word order in MSA, and clauses are either nominal or verbal. He classifies the nominal clause into two types: equational with a nominal Subject and nominal Predicate and non-equational a with verbal Predicate. The findings emphasize the functionalist nature of the TAG that views language as a system used to serve several communicative functions. MSA is characterized by flexibility of constituent order, which reflects the communicative intentions of the speaker or writer. Therefore, a change in the unmarked order of the clause is done to fulfill communicative and rhetorical purposes. Although the study shows some attempts to examine the functional syntactic structure of clauses, the experiential (Transitivity) strand of meaning is not given any significance in the analysis since the focus is on the extralinguistic and contextual factors that play a role in altering clause structure deciding which element is Theme/Rheme or Given/New.

A critical comprehensive study addressing the issue of language typology of Arabic in light of Halliday's SFG is done by Bardi (2008). It aims to describe the grammar of the Arabic language and compare it to the work of traditional Arab grammarians within the SFG. The study is based on analyzing different types of extracts and texts published in different countries, including some Quranic verses, extracts from literary works, and spoken dialogues from a movie. The researcher attempts to investigate the three metafunctions of SFG: ideational, interpersonal, and textual. While describing the Arabic

language, Bardi (2008) occasionally makes references to other languages like French, Japanese, and Spanish. The study concludes that the SFG is a sound theory to develop a systemic functional description of the Arabic language as a Semitic language. This systemic functional description has been found similar to the traditional grammarians' theory though such a traditional theory has been described as being unsophisticated. Bardi (2008) classifies the Arabic clause into nominal and verbal (VSO), considering the nominal clause as having three patterns NN, SVO (the Subject is the Agent or doer of the verb), and NVO (the Subject is not the Agent). The findings show that the Mood Base in terms of interpersonal metafunction in the verbal clause is made of the subject and the entire verbal group. When the Complement is suffixed to the verb, it is also included in the Mood Base. Modality is expressed in lexical verbs, modal lexical verbs (auxiliaries), verbal group nexus, prepositional groups, negative elements, and particles; Finiteness is in turn expressed in Modality. These modal Adjuncts constitute a part of the Mood Base. On the other hand, Subject and Predicate (referred to as Subject and Complement) form the Mood base in the nominal clause. Regarding the imperative clause, the Mood is formed by the Predicator and an infixed-subject mark.

When describing Transitivity in the ideational metafunction, Bardi (2008) offers a detailed description in terms of Process Types. It is found that transitivity is not enough to provide a complete account of the Transitivity system in Arabic. Thus, the ergative model is necessary to complete it because it can interpret the instances where the Agent is inanimate that cannot cause an action to happen, as in *The door opened*. With the textual metafunction, the findings indicate that it is easy to identify the Theme when it is realized by the Subject or circumstances. Still, it is rather difficult to identify it when it is represented by a verbal group. The reason is that the verbal group might include a suffixed Complement beside the attached or infixed Subject. The unmarked Theme is viewed as conflated with the Subject when the clause pattern is SVO and conflated with the Process

when it is VSO. More and above, the unmarked Theme in the interrogative clause is conflated with the interrogative element in Wh-questions and with the negotiators and the first constituent in the clause in both nominal and verbal clauses. Regarding the imperative clause, the unmarked Theme is conflated with the Predicator and the infixed Subject. Circumstantial Adjuncts are observed as the most common marked Theme. Notably, he concludes that the Subject in the VSO pattern is a part of the Mood Base in the declarative clause, but it is not the unmarked Theme since it constitutes a part of the Rheme. The Subject in the S/NVO clause is combined with the Predicator to make up the Mood element, and it also represents the unmarked Theme.

Even though the study has provided essential findings regarding the clause structure from below and above, i.e. the lexicogrammatical systems represented by the three metafunctions of Transitivity, Mood, and Theme, it neither demonstrates the syntactic properties of the constituents through the tree diagram nor matches the semantic analysis with the syntactic functions that the elements play in the clause.

Similarly, in a descriptive contrastive paper, Al-Hindawi and Al-Ebadi (2016) adopt Halliday's Systemic Functional Grammar to analyze English and MSA languages and find the differences and similarities between them in terms of their functional systems. They also aim at testing the applicability of the theory to the analysis of both languages. The findings prove the capability of the SFG to be applied to the analysis of English as well as MSA. It is also found out that both MSA and English are similar more than different, and so Arabic clauses could be analyzed ideationally, interpersonally, and textually as English clauses. Ideationally, experiential and logical meanings are expressed in Arabic with the difference that 'mental' Processes in Arabic display different numbers of Participant Roles (PRs). Another difference is that nominal clauses express 'relational' Processes, and rare verbs express them in verbal clauses. Furthermore, existential

Processes could be realized in terms of different options, including lexical verbs and adverbs. Interpersonally, both languages recognize similar systems to express interpersonal metafunction. Nevertheless, Finiteness is mainly included in the main verbs and auxiliaries but rarely in Arabic. It is also concluded that Mood System in the nominal clause is narrow since it does not contain any Finite and Predicator. Unlike English which expresses giving proposals through modularized interrogative clauses, Arabic uses various types of particles and different clause types. Textually, both English and Arabic employ identical Textual metafunctions with the difference that Arabic Topical Theme represented by Subject occurs preverbally in English while it comes post-verbally in Arabic.

2.4.2 Research within the Cardiff Grammar

The Cardiff Grammar framework has been recognized as a newborn syntactic theory in SFG applied first and foremost to English by Robin Fawcett (Fawcett, 1973, 1980, 1993, 2000, 2007, 2008, 2011a, 2011b, 2012a, 2012b; Fawcett, 2014; Fawcett, 2018, forthcoming b, forthcoming c; Fawcett & Young, 1988). Then it has been developed by him along with his colleagues at Cardiff University, such as Fawcett and Perkins (1981); Fawcett and Young (1988); Huang and Fawcett (1996); Fawcett and Huang (1995); Tench (1996); Tucker (1998, 2005); Ball (2002); Fontaine (2008); Neale (2002), etc. As a result, a person would not expect to find much work done on other languages. As far as the researcher knows, the CG has not been used to describe the MSA yet. According to Fawcett (2005, p. 3), the CG has been implemented in two languages, Chinese and Japanese, "small but significant computer implementations having been built for both." Additionally, the CG model has been utilized by some researchers to describe other languages. However, some studies have been written in languages other than English, which makes it difficult to include them in the literature review of this study. For instance, Gil and Garcia (2010) wrote a paper in Spanish to investigate Transitivity, Mood, and

Theme in Spanish within the CG framework. Similarly, Montarce (2014) studies the Transitivity system of one type of the 'mental' Process called the 'communication' Process in economic media discourse in Spanish in light of the CG. Two studies are found in the Chinese language, the first of which is done by Wei and Rui-zhi (2009) to present an overview of Transitivity within the CG, and the second is by Wei and Peng (2008) to highlight the extensions of the CG over the Sydney. There might be other studies that utilize the CG for the description of languages other than English, but accessing such studies is unfortunately not possible for the researcher as their medium of writing is not English.

With respect to the studies written in English, very few studies have been found interested in the Chinese language (i.e.Wei, 2014, 2017; Wei & Jingyuan, 2013; Zhang & Li, 2017). To begin with, Wei and Jingyuan (2013) conduct a study on Chinese to investigate and describe the nature of Chinese serial verb constructions in terms of their semantic and syntactic properties. The study makes use of ten examples illustrating Chinese serial verb constructions with reference to the CG approach. These constructions are characterized by having two consecutive verb phrases. The study reveals that some serial verb structures are represented by simple clauses that contain one matrix clause or one ranking clause wherein one of its elements is filled by another clause. There is only one main action Process expounded by the Main verb and one embedded clause that fills an element in this construction. The Process of the embedded clause is merely a part of the embedded clause that fills the position of a sentential component. Other serial verb constructions are composed of complex clauses which indicate that more than one situation is employed. In these constructions, "two situations are realized by one sentence with two ranking clauses at the level of form" (Wei & Jingyuan, 2013, p. 151). Thus, Chinese serial verb constructions could be formed by either a simple clause or a complex one.

Another study by Wei (2014) examines bi-functional constituent constructions in modern Mandarin. The study aims to determine the type of clause these bi-functional constituents display and find out their roles. Bi-functional constituent construction is defined as a structure that "contains a constituent functioning as both the object of the first verb and the subject of the second verb, and that can be formalized as NP1+VP1+ NP2+VP2" (Wei, 2014, p. 43). To achieve these research objectives, five types of these constructions are analyzed by matching the semantic functions of each constituent with the appropriate syntactic unit. The findings show that the two types that express causation and meaning in the 'influential' Process and the other type that expresses the 'mental emotion' Process are described as simple clauses. The bi-functional constituent in the former functions only as a subject of the embedded clause in the matrix clause, as Figure 2.1 demonstrates. In contrast, the bi-functional component in the latter plays only one role, either as a Complement of the matrix clause or as the Subject of the embedded clause, as Figure 2.2 shows below.

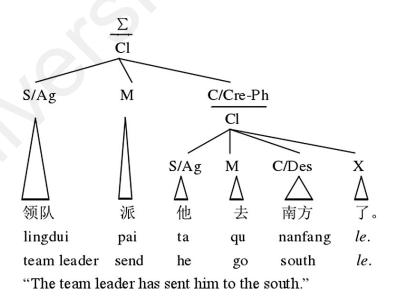


Figure 2.1: The analysis of a Chinese causative influential process (Wei, 2014, p. 50).

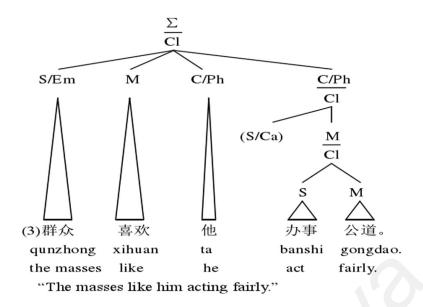


Figure 2.2: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction expressing emotion (Wei, 2014, p. 54)

As Figure 2.1 illustrates, the complement is filled by an embedded clause whose bifunctional is the Subject. Figure 2.2 shows that the bi-functional element is either the first Complement or the Subject in the embedded clause that fills the second Complement. The study finds out that the types of clauses that express description are also described as having two constructions: a) as a simple clause wherein the bi-functional consistent functions only as the Complement of the matrix clause as shown in Figure 2.3 below, or b) as compact complex sentences as shown in Figure 2.4. To put it another way, the second constructions are not considered as bi-functional constituent constructions but as complex sentences of two co-ordinating clauses.

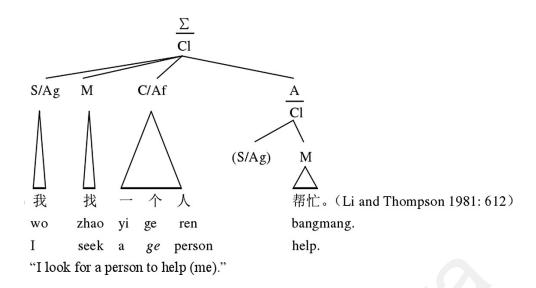
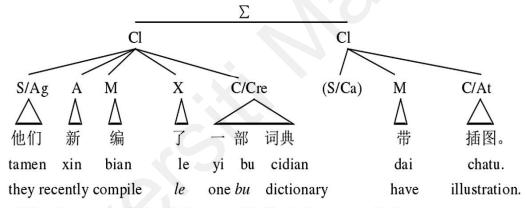


Figure 2.3: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction with two processes forming an action-and-purpose logico—semantic relationship (Wei, 2014, p. 55)



[&]quot;They have compiled a dictionary with illustrations recently."

Figure 2.4: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction expressing description (Wei, 2014, p. 56).

The last type of sentence represents the 'existential' Process which is viewed as a compact complex sentence forming co-ordination relationship wherein the second clause adds new information to the first. The bi-functional constituent also plays one role, the Complement of the first clause (see Figure 2.5 below).

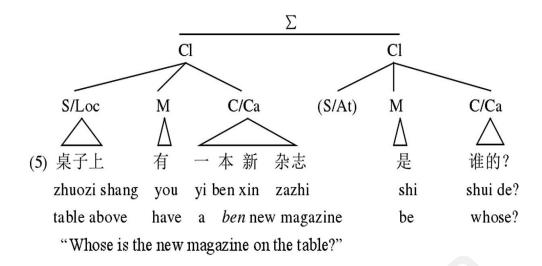
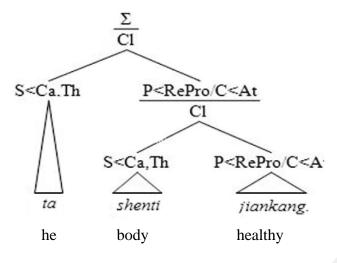


Figure 2.5: The analysis of a bi-functional constituent construction expressing existence (Wei, 2014, p. 56)

Adopting the CG framework, the same researcher Wei (2017) studies Subject-Predicate Predicate sentences (S-P P sentences) in Modern Chinese. The study intends to answer three questions: 1) what /are the functional syntactic features of these structures, 2) what are the semantic motivations for such structures, 3) and what are the contextual constraints on these structures? The study analyzes seven types that have been acknowledged as representing S-P P structures. The study concludes that only one type out of the seven cases represents a true S-P P structure, and another type represents S-P P structure in one sense and S-P S in another sense, while the other five types never display this structure. Figure 2.6 demonstrates the true S-P P structure.



'He is (physically) healthy.

Figure 2.6: Functional analysis of a true S-P P structure (Wei, 2017, p. 957).

The initial word functions as the Subject S1, realizing the semantic features of the Carrier and Theme. The second element that constitutes S2+P2 represents P1 or the Complement that recognizes the semantic feature of the Attribute of S1. The Complement is conflated with the Predicator, which realizes a 'relational' Process. In addition, the study concludes that the second type of sentence structure could be interpreted as S-P P structure in one sense and as S-P S in another sense. The other five types are described as not being S-P P, but rather as other types that are structured as C + S + P; S + C + P; A + S + P + C, and S + A + P + C. As a result, it is concluded that contextual factors play a vital role in determining the syntactic and semantic features of elements in the language.

Zhang and Li (2017) attempt to examine the semantic and syntactic function in lexical conversation within modern Chinese nominal groups. The study highlights two main differences between English and Chinese: The first is the way polarity, tense, and modality are expressed, and the second is the lack of fixed word class in Chinese. The study concludes that in terms of function the Chinese nominal group can be used as the Main verb (M), Main verb Extension (MEx), and sometimes as prepositional groups.

In a recent study carried out by Xiang and Liu (2018), the CG is used to investigate the semantic Mood and the syntactic properties of the *Let's* construction in English by making use of COCA corpus data. In terms of the semantic choices of Mood, it is found that *Let's* construction realizes a proposal for action to make three choices: a) by self and addressee, b) by self, and c) by addressee. The *Let's* constructions made by self and addressee are used to express firm proposal, statement of assumption, and statement of wish; those constructions made by self are used to express suggestion, self-deliberation, and offer; those made by addressee are used to express request and suggestion. In terms of syntax, this construction is structured as Let element (L) + Subject (S) + Main verb (M), as represented in Figure 2.7 below.

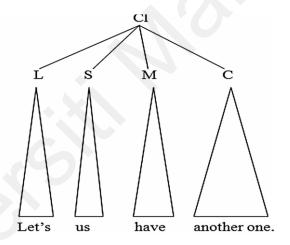


Figure 2.7: The syntactic analysis of Let's construction in English (Xiang & Liu, 2018, p. 32).

2.5 Conclusion

This chapter has summarized the most relevant studies that examine the simple clause in MSA. It has begun with an orientation that makes explicit criteria for including and excluding research on Arabic to be reviewed. The study has excluded all the studies done to investigate either the varieties of MSA or the other different languages in SFG. It has been found that a large bulk of studies have been done to analyze the features of the simple clause in MSA from different theoretical perspectives; however, no study has

matched the semantic functions with the syntactic structural elements through the tree diagram. The Chomskyan approach centers on presenting the syntactic aspects of the clause (e.g. Abdel-Hafiz, 2005; Al-Aqarbeh & Al-Sarayreh, 2017; Al-Balushi, 2012; Al-Khawalda, 2012; Alazzawie, 2016; Alduais, 2012; Ali, 2015; Anshen & Schreiber, 1968; Bakir, 1979; Fassi Fehri, 1993; Mohamed, 2013; Shlonsky, 1997). In contrast, the other studies that employ the SFG focus on the semantic aspects of the constituents that compose the clause in MSA (i.e. Abu-Mansour, 1986; Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008). Other studies lie in the middle in that they mainly evaluate the Arabic traditional theory providing a relatively limited description that does not entirely cover either the semantics or the syntax of the simple clause in MSA (e.g. Al-Liheibi, 1999; Alsuhaibani, 2012; Peled, 2009). Furthermore, the CG is found to be adopted in a limited way by linguists to describe languages, such as Chinese and Spanish. However, no study has been done to describe linguistics issues in MSA in light of the CG.

Therefore, it can be observed that the different accounts of the simple clause in MSA still need to be investigated in terms of the combination of the semantic properties with the syntactic ones to achieve a better analysis of the clause at both language levels, i.e., form and meaning. Furthermore, it is hopefully claimed that the CG, as a functional syntactic approach, is capable of not only presenting the syntactic aspects of the clause elements but also offering a representation of the semantic roles associated with these syntactic features. Hopefully, the study will be the first of its kind to match the syntactic features and the semantic ones economically through the tree diagram, which is commonly used for almost only the syntactic representation in Generative Grammar.

Next is Chapter 3, which offers an overview of Halliday's SG and Fawcett's CG as models of language in SFL. It briefly describes the main concepts and foundations of Halliday's SG. Then it presents a detailed discussion of the CG's principles and

terminology as it is the theoretical framework on which the current study is based. It first describes the main syntactic categories and relationships and the clause elements identified in the CG. Then it discusses the semantic features of the Transitivity system network in terms of Process types and the configurations of the Participant Roles associated with them.

CHAPTER 3: OVERVIEW OF THE CARDIFF GRAMMAR

3.1 Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to offer a brief backdrop of Systemic Functional Linguistics, starting from Halliday and ending with the recent theoretical development of SFL by Robin Fawcett. Section 3.2 will first shed some light on Halliday's language dimensions of system and structure, stratification, instantiation, and metafunction. Then Section 3.3 will introduce the Cardiff Grammar, where the first focus will be on the generative aspect of the CG approach followed by the descriptive one that is central in this study. An overview of the crucial concepts and categories that make up the CG syntactic theory will be provided in the descriptive approach. The chapter in Section 3.3.5 then will offer a brief but sufficient account of the Transitivity system and Process types as described by Fawcett providing examples about the functioning of each Process type and the patterning of the Participant Roles associated with them. This background knowledge is significant because it constitutes part of the theoretical framework of the research. It simply reveals the principles and concepts that basically model data analysis and description in this study.

3.2 Linguistic Systems in Halliday's SFL

Systemic Functional Linguistics is a theory of language developed by M.A.K. Halliday in the 1960s as a result of the academic influence of his British teacher and linguist J. R. Firth. Halliday (1994, p. 40) defines the systemic theory as "a theory of meaning as choice, by which a language is interrupted as networks of interlocking options." Halliday views language as an interrelated network of systems used in different social contexts to produce various types of meaning. Thus, language does not represent only linguistic aspects that include semantics and lexicogrammar, but also it is used to serve specific social functions and purposes (Matthiessen, 1995, 2007; Matthiessen & Kasper, 1988).

For Halliday, whether the language is spoken or written, the linguistic system of language itself has essential dimensions or forms of order when its grammar is functionally examined. These dimensions are system and structure, stratification, instantiation, and metafunction (Halliday & Matthiessen, 2014, p. 20). These dimensions involve the language levels of phonetics, phonology, lexicogrammar, and semantics. They are hieratically organized and related to each other to give the language system its linguistic form as a spoken or written text. These dimensions will be briefly discussed to introduce the main concepts that base Halliday's SFL.

3.2.1 System and Structure in SFL

The concepts of system and structure are basic in shaping the SFL theory. According to Halliday and Matthiessen (2014, p. 22), "structure is the syntagmatic ordering in a language: patterns, or regularities, in what goes together with what. System, by contrast, is the paradigmatic ordering on the other axis: patterns on what could go instead of what." What Halliday views as a set of choices made by the speaker to produce language represents the system or the paradigmatic structure. On the other hand, the selected system choices represent the syntagmatic structure. Halliday and Matthiessen (2004, 2014) illustrate this by giving an example from the system of polarity, which has the paradigmatic sets of choices of either positive or negative. When the negative choice of polarity is selected, there are other two sets of choices, namely generalized as in 'they didn't know' or specified as 'they never knew'. When the speaker makes his choice by selecting the generalized negative structure 'they didn't know', this selection is said to represent the syntagmatic structure that specifies the configuration of the clause (Halliday & Matthiessen, 2004, 2014). As a result, it is the functions of the system that create the grammatical structure, which makes SFL a paradigmatic-centered theory.

3.2.2 Stratification

SFL analyses the grammar of any language in terms of three levels or strata: semantics stratum, phonology stratum (sound or orthography system), and lexicogrammar stratum (wording system) (Morely, 2000, p. 7). The semantics stratum refers to the components and social functions that language serves in certain contexts. Syntax, morphology, and vocabulary (lexis) constitute the lexicogrammar stratum. Phonology stratum stands for the sound structure or patterning in spoken language or graphology in written language. The lexicogrammar together with the phonology and graphology strata constitute the output of the semantics stratum as they give the linguistic form to the semantic output (Morely, 2000)

3.2.3 Instantiation

Halliday and Matthiessen (2014, p. 26) state that "this dimension refers to the system of a language when it is instantiated in the form of text." Thus, the relationship between the language as a system (potential) and language as a text (instance) is a cline in which the system and the text make their poles. The text is the reference of the system, which is the underlying potential of a language. Halliday demonstrates the relationship between the system and the text by comparing it to the relationship between climate and weather. The idea is simply that although climate and weather represent similar phenomena, they are different in terms of depth of time. While text is the weather, system is the climate.

3.2.4 Metafunction

Since language is a system made up of the components of semantics and lexicogrammar, which are then realized in the syntactic structure, for Halliday, meaning in language has three essential functional components or metafunctions. These metafunctions are 'ideational', 'interpersonal', and 'textual.' 'Ideational' metafunction is the language as a reflection of our experience of the world around us (Martin, 2020). It

has two main components: experiential meaning, expressed by the system of 'Transitivity' (Halliday & Matthiessen, 2014, p. 30), and logical meaning, employed on complex clauses. The experiential meaning interprets the clause as a representation of three elements: Participants, Circumstances, and a specific Process (verb) of happening, doing, saying, sensing, being, having, etc. Generally, Halliday recognizes six types of Processes: Material (doing and happening), mental (sensing) and relational (being and having), behavioral, verbal, and existential.

The second metafunction is called 'interpersonal' that is concerned with the personal and social roles and relationships of those involved in the speech event (Teruya et al., 2007). This metafunction interprets the clause as an exchange whereby different language functions, such as proposition (giving/information) and proposals (demanding/goods-&services), are performed. The clause here is analyzed in terms of the system of 'Mood'², which has two-part structures: 'Mood Base' and 'Residue'. The Subject element in the Mood system is a nominal group, while the Finite constitutes a part of the verbal group. The sequence of Subject and Finite determines the selection of the Mood in the clause made by the speaker, for example, whether the clause is interrogative or declarative.

The last metafunction is known as 'textual', which is related to the construction of the text. It is a metafunction of 'enabling' since the creation of a text is done by integrating both ideational and interpersonal metafunctions (Halliday & Matthiessen, 2014, p. 30).

.

¹ Halliday and Matthiessen (2004, 2014) use capitalized letters for the names of the three systems network, TRANSITIVITY, MOOD, and THEME. However, this study prefers to use names with only initial capital letters (upper case) to be consistent with the other terms used.

² According to Halliday and Matthiessen (2004, 2014), 'MOOD' with capitalized letters is the name of the primary interpersonal system while Mood with an initial capital letter is the name of the element of the interpersonal system.

The clause is seen as a message consisting of a 'Theme' combined with a 'Rheme.' These elements are recognized in the clause structure by their order. That is, the element that is selected to occur first is the Theme while the remainder is the Rheme. The selection of an element to be the thematic element is a choice made by the speaker to serve pragmatic purposes.

3.3 The Cardiff Grammar

The Cardiff Grammar is a model of language named after Cardiff University, where Robin Fawcett has led a group of linguists to provide a framework for describing and generating texts in the English language. Even though Fawcett (2000, 2008) considers Halliday as the Father of SFG, he offers insightful criticism of his theory, calling it "friendly critique". Fawcett's focus is to develop a simplified version of SFG for the twenty-first century whereby an adequate explicit representation of the language is presented at the level of form as well as the level of meaning. Fawcett (2000) believes that the representation given in Halliday's work (1985) and even in his later works fails to serve as a final representation of language at the level of form, which demands an evaluation of the theoretical status of the multiple structure representation in SFG (Fawcett, 2000). Moreover, he argues that Halliday's SFG has remained unchanged since it appeared as a functional approach, insisting on the necessity to develop a functionally and applicably modified version to be used in the description of English and any other languages.

As a result, Fawcett presents his ideas as a continual progression of Halliday's SFG. Based on the fundamental concepts of Halliday's SFG, Fawcett (2000) has proposed some changes needed for the development of a modern SFG, considering them an extension and simplification and further improvements of the standard model rather than an attack on it. Fawcett (2008) claims that his version of the CG has been developed to describe

English in text analysis. It could also be applied to the study and description of other languages, and he mentions Spanish, Chinese, and Japanese as languages described in the CG. Therefore, Fawcett (2005, 2008) invites all those interested in describing languages to objectively assess his CG model and apply it to other languages. Hence, the current study takes up his invitation and targets the MSA variety of the Arabic language for the purpose of analysis.

As a model developed out of such a well-known theory as SFL, it has been reviewed and compared with Halliday's SG, receiving both positive and negative critiques. In terms of the positive critiques, the CG has received outstanding reviews from Butler (2003a, 2003b) when he presents a detailed description of three main functional models of SFG, two of which are Halliday's SG and Fawcett's CG. Butler (2003b, p. 471) claims that "although in my view the Cardiff model represents a substantial improvement on the Sydney account, this opportunity for functional still goes largely unexploited." In the same vein, Butler (2003a, p. 157) describes the CG development as "an explicit and testable theory of the grammar itself." Being a researcher at Cardiff University, Fontaine (2008, p. 97) also describes the CG as "the only systemic functional framework with an explicit theory of syntax." The CG has been positively reviewed by Butler (2019) in another work that attempts to highlight significant similarities and differences between SFL and other functional/cognitive/constructionist models. Commenting on the CG as a model in SFL, Butler (2019, p. 260) states that "My view is that although the two approaches share a large number of aims and assumptions, the Cardiff model should not be seen simply as a minor offshoot from what some consider to be 'mainstream' SFL, but deserves to be considered on a par with the Sydney model." In addition, in a work done to review and compare the system of Transitivity in the SG and CG models, Bartley (2018, p. 1) also emphasizes the principal addition of the CG to the SFL, saying, "although the CG model offers a number of valid ideas and, arguably, provides potential

solutions, it has nonetheless received significantly less attention for some of the problems associated with the Sydney model."

In contrast, despite acknowledging the contribution of the CG per se to SFL in general, the CG has received somewhat negative critiques when its principles and concepts are critically studied and compared with the SG model. For example, although Butler (2013) has described the CG as more cognitive-interactive than SG when assessing positions on cognition taken in the SG and CG models of SFL, he added that "the meanings of the Cardiff grammar remain bony-structured as in the original model, and it is here that work in cognitive linguistics would be very helpful" (Butler, 2013, p. 206). When putting Transitivity to the test in both models, Bartley (2018, p. 1) points out that "although both models have various strengths, neither model is void of limitations". The main problematic issues raised related to Tranisvirty in both models are 1) the difficulty in distinguishing between some types of Circumstantial Roles (CR), 2) the ambiguity of what constitutes the main verb when more than one verb appears in the clause, 3) the confusion regarding whether an item denotes a CR or an inherited PR, and 4) inconsistencies with the criteria used to determine whether a verb belongs to one process category or another. Finally, Andersen (2017) offers a critical discussion of some problematic issues in both models' accounts of the interpersonal metafunction. It was concluded that the CG does not overtly confirm the substitution of the distinction between information and proposal for action with that between information vs. goods-&-services, and the CG's proposal of 150 Mood meanings questions the degree of generalization in the network when doing textual analysis.

Drawing upon this brief introduction, the researcher has chosen the CG approach to test its applicability to MSA based on its claim to provide the functional syntax of language at the levels of form and meaning by integrating them into one single structure.

Therefore, a concise introduction to the generative part is given to show how meaning is systemically realized in form. Following this is a detailed discussion of how a language is described to highlight the main foundations that model the analysis intended to be carried out in the current study.

3.3.1 The Cardiff Grammar as a Generative Approach

Neale (2002) points out that the priority of the concepts of choice and system in SFL has motivated researchers to do much work in the field of Natural Language Generation (NLG). Not only does CG attempt to provide a systemic model for language production, but also it offers a framework for language analysis. Therefore, some light on the principles of the system networks of language must be shed.

3.3.1.1 Meaning and form in the CG

Despite the differences between the CG and the SG, both models share the same basic concepts and principles. In SFL, language is viewed as equivalent to potential while text is equivalent to instance, and language and text are related to instantiation (Fawcett & Young, 1988, p. 9). Fawcett (2000, 2008) views text as an instance of language in use. The relation between language and text is equivalent to that between potential and form. Thus, form is the realization of meaning in the CG. According to Fawcett (2008, p. 37), any semiotic system consists of two basic levels: a) **meaning** and b) **form**, each of which consists of components and outputs. The **potential** is regarded as the components, and the **instance is** considered to be the outputs. Figure 3.1 describes these components as a Z-shaped line through the four boxes below.

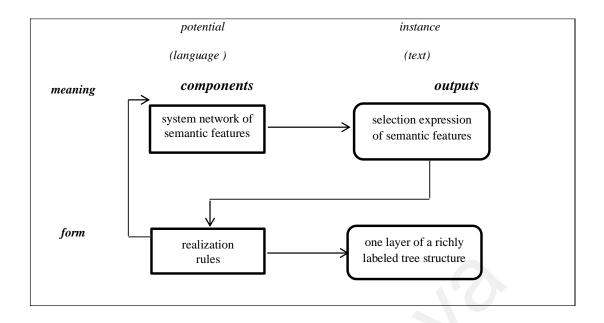


Figure 3.1: The components and their outputs in a systemic functional grammar (Fawcett, 2008, p. 41)

As Figure 3.1 demonstrates, the first essential level is that of **meaning**, which specifies the meaning potential, and the second level is that of **form**, which specifies the output from the grammar. In other words, both levels of form and meaning are generatively connected in such a way that the output from the level of meaning is the input to the level of form. These realization rules specify the structures by converting the selection expression of semantic features into a layer of the tree diagram representation of the clause constituting the output (instance) (Fawcett, 2000, 2008).

3.3.1.2 System networks in the CG

The essence of SFL lies in system networks when discussing language generation. Fawcett (2008, p. 96) defines a system network as "simply a network of systems connected to each other by 'and' and 'or' relationships." A system consists of a set of semantic features, which expresses the choices in meaning potential, and a set of realization rules, which makes the formal representation of the speaker's selected semantic choices. Each system in the system networks has an entry condition with many related features (Fawcett, 2000). These system networks are associated with each other

by 'dependency' in that the choice in a certain system depends on the choice made between the features in the preceding system. Figure 3.2 shows how generating a clause in English is made.

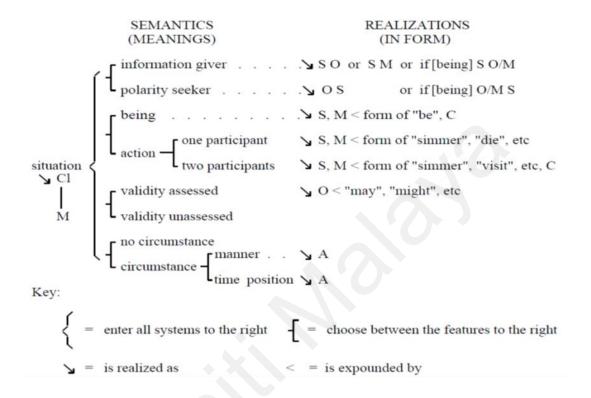


Figure 3.2: A very small systemic functional grammar for the English clause (Fawcett, 2008, p. 93)

Figure 3.2 illustrates the two components of a language: the semantic features on the left and the realization rules on the right. The curly bracket denotes 'and' and symbolizes the system networks that could cover more of the meanings of the language, while the right-opening square bracket means 'or', which requires the selection between the related features of the system. For example, Fawcett (2008) states that if a clause is to be generated, the semantic feature [situation] first takes place. From this system, there are different entry conditions whose semantic features are related by 'or'. For example, the entry condition [action] has two features, either of which must be selected by the speaker, i.e. [one participant] or [two participants]. Once one of these options is selected, another

return must take place to the 'and' curly bracket to start a new sub-network of the semantic feature below the one that has already been traversed, which is [validity assessed] or [validity unassessed]. The result of selecting and completing the pathways to their terminals is the generation of the 'selection expressions' (Fawcett, 2008, p. 99). These selection expressions represent instances at the level of meaning. For illustration, the selection expressions resulting from selecting the first feature in every system are:

[situation, information giver, being, validity assessed, no circumstance]

These selection expressions are simply the input to the realization rules. The realization rules constitute the final stage in generating language. The realization rules are employed to specify how these abstract selected features are expressed as formal structures. To illustrate, if the realization rules are applied for the above selection expressions, the following elements will be generated:

A possible output or items that expound these elements would be, for example, 'Adam may be hungry' (Fawcett, 2008, p. 100), as presented in Figure 3.3 below.

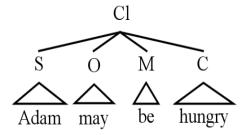


Figure 3.3: The clause structure generated from the first selection expression (Fawcett, 2008, p. 100)

To conclude, system networks are a meaning-oriented approach used to provide an explicit manifestation of language in terms of the meaning and syntax potentials.

3.3.2 The CG as a Functional Descriptive Approach

Fawcett (2000, 2008) believes that the functional model that does not provide an explicit description of the realization of meaning by form is not scientific. Therefore, Fawcett offers new insights into how a language is described by setting up language categories, determining the relations that hold those categories, and introducing concepts that make up the standard model for language description.

3.3.2.1 Basic categories and relationships in the CG

Fawcett's theory of syntax consists of four main concepts or categories and four relationships that hold these categories together. The four categories are unit, element, item, and place, while the four relationships are 'componence', 'filling', 'exponence', and 'conflation' (Fawcett, 2008, p. 75), as shown in Figure 3.4.

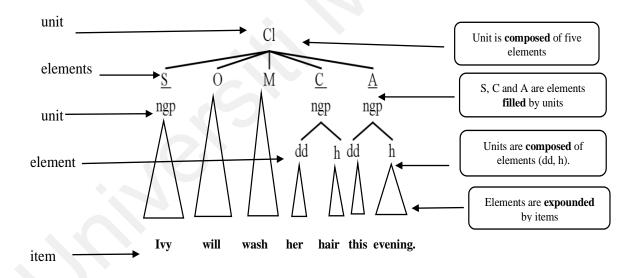


Figure 3.4: Basic concepts and relationships in the Cardiff Grammar, adapted from (Fawcett, 2008, p. 75)

The category of unit is at the top of the tree diagram, while the item category (word) is at the foot of the tree diagram. The 'item' is the direct replacement of the concepts of 'word' and 'morpheme' even though the concept of 'word class' is still used to refer to the class of an item, such as noun, adjective, and adverb (Fawcett, 2000, p. 226). There

are two layers of units and two layers of elements. According to Fawcett (2008, p. 76), a unit comprises one or more elements; the unit here is the clause, which is composed of five elements, namely S, O, M, C, and A. Some elements are directly expounded by items, as is the case with O and M, which are directly expounded by 'will' and 'wash', respectively. Yet, other elements are filled by a unit (or units), as is the case with S, C, and A that noun groups fill. Any such unit is itself composed of one or more elements that are eventually expounded by an item. To put it another way, 'componence' expresses the relationship between a unit and its elements. 'Filling' expresses the relationship between an element and the unit realizing that element. The fourth type of relation is 'conflation' which means that more than one meaning from two different strands of meaning is simultaneously fused in one element. Conflation relationship is symbolized by the forward-slash (/).

While Halliday and Matthiessen (2006) propose the notion of the rank scale, which hierarchically classifies units according to their rank from the largest (sentence) to the smallest (morpheme), the CG abandons this notion, identifying five classes of unit: 'the clause' (Cl), the 'nominal group/phrase' (ngp), the 'prepositional group'(pgp), the 'quality group'(qlgp), and the 'quantity group' (qtgp). In addition, Fawcett (2000, p. 194) recognizes two minor classes of unit, which are called 'genitive cluster' (genclr) and 'human proper name cluster (hpnclr). Unlike Halliday's SG, there is no unit called the verbal group in the CG because the 'Main verb' and 'Finite', Main verb and Operator in the CG, are treated as direct elements of the clause. According to Fawcett (2000, p. 277), it is neither the position of the element in a unit nor its form (i.e., pivotal element), such as the head in the noun phrase or the apex (adjective) in the adjective phrase, that determines its class of unit in a given structure; it is rather that unit's semantic and functional features. Units and elements are alternately related to each other in terms of componence and filling. Fawcett (2000, p. 19) points out that both element and structure

are mutually interdependent since there can be no structure without elements. Nor can there be an element without a structure of which it is a component.

The fourth essential concept of 'place' occurs between a unit and its element (Fawcett, 2000, p. 220). Even though Halliday mentions the term place as the places in which elements are ordered in a specific structure, he does not propose it as an essential category.

3.3.3 The Clause Syntax as the Central Unit in the CG

The central unit in SFL is the clause, and so is it in the CG. Fawcett (2000, p. 200) refers to the clause as "the syntactic unit that corresponds to the semantic unit of the 'situation', or the unit of 'event' in the belief system." He states that the clause is made up of functional elements, such as S (Subject), O (Operator), M (Main verb), C (Complement), A (Adjunct), etc., which are either filled by units or directly expounded by item³. In the CG, only Subjects, Complements, and Adjuncts can be filled by units (Fawcett, 2008, p. 78). Consequently, one word could fill the functional elements of O and M. In general, seventeen elements are identified by Fawcett in his CG model, as shown in Table 3.1 below. The most frequent elements of the clause in English are S, O, M, C, and A. However, other elements may frequently occur, such as Main verb Extension (MEx) and Auxiliary verb Extension (XEx), and Linker and Binder also occur to connect clauses. Table 3.1 below explains the elements of the clause in English as proposed in the CG.

.

³ The elements of the clause as well as the names of the Participant Roles are always written in an initial capital letter to indicate that they are used in the 'technical sense' rather than their everyday use (Fawcett, 2011a, p. 2; forthcoming c, p. 14)

Table 3.1: Elements of the clause in English, adapted from (Fawcett, 2008, p. 249)

Element	Standing for	Definition
A=	Adjunct (many types, including the Inferential Adjunct (IA)	any element that expresses a circumstantial meaning and frequently comes at or near the end of the clause (Fawcett, 2008, p. 166).
В=	Binder	what relates dependent clauses to another unit, such as <i>if, when, because</i> (Fawcett, 2008, p. 208).
C=	Complement	any participant role that is not S (Fawcett, 2008, p. 138)
F=	Formulaic Element	what signals a decision by the analyst to treat the string of words that precedes it as a fixed string, such as <i>would you mind</i> reading this? (Fawcett, 2011b, p. 30).
I=	Infinitive Element	the element that is almost always expounded by the word <i>to</i> (Fawcett, 2008, p. 198).
L=	Let Element	what expresses a suggestion or proposal for action by self and addressee (Fawcett, 2008, p. 162).
M =	Main Verb	what expresses the process of the clause (Fawcett, 2000, 2008)
MEx=	Main Verb Extension	what functions as an extension of the Main Verb, i.e. phrasal verb, so that the two elements jointly express a Process (Fawcett, 2008, p. 184).
N=	Negator	the independent element that expresses strong negative, i.e., <i>not</i> , (Fawcett, 2008, p. 129).
O*=	Operator or O/X or O/M (where /= 'is conflated with')	what is equivalent to Halliday's Finite. It could be a lexical or modal verb (Fawcett, 2000, 2008).
S=	Subject	the word (or words) which, by occurring before or after the Operator, tells you whether the clause is an information giver or a polarity seeker (Fawcett, 2008, p. 134).
V=	Vocative	the element that is always filled by a nominal group whose function is to call the addressee's attention (Fawcett, 2008, p. 206).
X=	Auxiliary Verb (several types)	such as verbs to be, do, have, and modal verbs.
XEx=	Auxiliary Verb X Extension (several types)	what expresses an extension of the Auxiliary verb that is always followed by the Infinitive element (Fawcett, 2008).
& =	Linker	what relates co-ordinate units of the same class, such as <i>and</i> , <i>but</i> , <i>or</i> (Fawcett, 2000).
St=	Starter	the element that occurs in an embedded unit to indicate its beginning, and it is expounded by a comma, a dash, or a bracket (Fawcett, 2000, pp. 215-216).
E =	Ender (a final comma, full stop, question mark, exclamation mark, semi- colon, or colon)	any punctuation that occurs in both embedded and unembedded units to indicate their end, and it is expounded by a wide range of punctuation marks (Fawcett, 2000, p. 216).

As demonstrated in Table 3.1, the CG treats the elements of the Main verb and Operator as direct elements of the clause rather than elements of a unit called verbal group. Fawcett (2008) attributes this to several reasons. First, the Main verb expresses the Process that predicts the clause's Participant Roles (S and C at the level of form). As a result, it is more logical that S, M, and C are directly related to each other as sister elements of the same unit, that is, the clause. Second, Halliday promotes the 'Finite operator' element, equivalent to Operator in the CG, as an element of the clause. Consequently, it would be better to promote Operator as a direct element of the clause, especially if it can be frequently conflated with the Main verb, as 'are' in 'They are [O/M] reporters', and sometimes with Auxiliary verb, as 'has' in 'King Henry has [O/X] attacked Rouen'. Third, the Process, which is the Main verb at the syntactic level, is also expressed by the element MEx, which might be separated from the Main verb by another element, such as C. For example, 'off' is the MEx in such a clause as 'George Fox would not take his hat off before the judge'. It is separated from the Main verb by the Complement element 'his hat'. Fourth, unlike other types of English groups, the verbal group does not stand on its own as a referring expression. For instance, in a clause as 'The boys have been eating ice cream in the garden', the ngps 'the boys' and 'ice cream' and the pgp 'in the garden' are regarded as referring expressions in their own while 'have been eating' is not (Fawcett, 2008, pp. 49-50). Consequently, Fawcett considers the reasons mentioned above sufficient to treat the M and O elements as direct elements of the clause.

Regarding the clause element of Adjunct, the CG emphasizes that most Adjuncts express a circumstantial meaning, and they tend to occur at or near the end of the clause. In general, Adjuncts are said to be filled by various types of groups, such as a nominal group as 'the day after tomorrow' and 'here', the prepositional group as 'in the park', and the quality group as 'very much' (Fawcett, 2008, p. 168). The term 'Extension' is an

innovative proposal by Fawcett occurring in two elements. To begin with, the element of MEx is regarded as the next most frequent clause element after S, O, M, C, and A. Unlike Halliday's SG, it is given a central place in the CG and introduced as a further semantic aspect of the Process. In other words, the meaning of a Process might not be fully realized by the Main verb only, but it rather extends to other elements in the clause. Examples (1-5) below demonstrate how the MEx is filled by different syntactic units (Fawcett, 2008, pp. 186-188).

- (1) He [S] brought [M] **up** [MEx] the problem [C] again [A].
- (2) He [S] had [O/X] fallen [M] **in love** [MEx] with her [C] when they were students [A].
- (3) Ivy [S] gave [M] her boyfriend [C] a hug [MEx].
- (4) Ivy [S] is [O/M] very fond [MEx] of Ike [C].
- (5) Ike [S] went [M] **shopping** [MEx].

The elements in bold realize the MEx element because they jointly express the Process meaning realized by the Main verb in each clause. In example (1), the MEx is represented by what is traditionally known as a phrasal verb or a multi-word verb. Yet, Fawcett treats M and MEx as different clause elements rather than one element. The MEx is expressed by a pgp 'in love' in example (2) and a ngp 'a hug' in example (3). These groups are analyzed as MExs because neither 'in love' denotes actual falling nor 'a hug' is an object that could be given. Rather, they function as an extension of the Process through which the Process is semantically expressed. The type of Process in example (3) is called the 'reified' Process since the Process is realized in a nominal group with an event thing as its head (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 23). For the same reason, the MEx could be filled by a quality group as 'very fond of' as in example (4) or a partial or non-finite clause as 'shopping' in example (5).

The second extended element is Auxiliary verb Extension (XEx). For the element of XEx to occur, it must be preceded by an X and followed by another element that is the Infinitive element (I), which is almost always expounded by the word 'to'. In other words, a trio of elements or a sequence of elements serves to express a single meaning X +XEx +I (Fawcett, 2008, p. 201). Let us consider examples (6), (7), and (8).

- (6) she [S] is [O/X] **bound** [XEx] to [I] be [M] rich [C].
- (7) She [S] is [O/X] **going** [XEx] to [I] win [M] the race [C].
- (8) He [S] is [O/X] widely [A] believed [XEx] to [I] be [M] guilty [C].

Fawcett (2008) states that most of the words that function as XEx used to be lexical verbs before they turned to be adjectives in the development of the English language over time. The Infinitive element 'to' is an independent element that is neither a part of the Operator nor a part of the Main verb.

Finally, the elements that are considered as least frequent are the elements of Let (L), Vocative (V), and Formulaic (F), see Table 3.1. Linker (L) and Binder (B) frequently occur at clause boundaries with the difference that a Linker, such as 'so', 'and', 'but', or' etc., joins co-ordinated clauses. In contrast, a Binder, such as 'therefore', 'because', etc., connects dependent clauses. Starter (St) and Ender (E) can occur in any unit with the exception that St and E are expounded by punctuation marks (Fawcett, 2000). In addition, the element of Starter only occurs in the embedded units, whether clauses or groups, and it is expounded by a comma, a dash, or a bracket. On the other hand, the element of Ender occurs at the end of the embedded and unembedded units, and it is expounded by a full stop, question mark, final comma, exclamation mark, semi-colon, or colon (Fawcett, 2000, pp. 215-216). Example (9) is illustrated in Figure 3.5 to show the syntactical analysis of a clause in the negative 'information giver' form ending with the full stop as an E.

(9) She has not really been told the truth all this time.

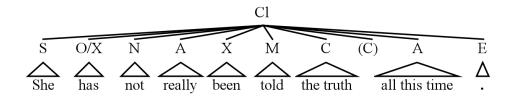


Figure 3.5: An analysis of a simple clause in the negative information giver (Fawcett, 2008, p. 230)

As Figure 3.5 demonstrates, the clause is made of ten elements, including the E. The second Complement is not expounded by any item because this element is covert here. In other words, the verb 'told' is a three-role Process that inherently involves three PRs: Agent (S), Affected-Carrier (C1), and a Phenomena (C2), which has no realization at the level of form; however, it is necessary to identify it in the syntactic functional representation of the clause. Therefore, it is written in round brackets (C). This would be applied to the other clause elements that are structurally covert but semantically overt.

3.3.4 Parataxis and Hypotaxis vs. Co-ordination and Embedding

Like Halliday's SG, the CG classifies clauses into two types: 1) clause simplex and 2) clause complex. However, a distinctive difference lies between both approaches in the criteria by which a clause is identified as either simple or complex. Halliday treats both 'parataxis' and 'hypotaxis' as two types of clause complex. Parataxis concerns the relationship between two units of equal status joined by a Linker as 'and', 'so', 'or', etc. Hypotaxis expresses a relation between two units in which one is said to be dependent on the other. On the contrary, the CG describes parataxis as a clause complex while hypotaxis as a clause simplex. To illustrate, the CG defines the simple clause as that clause that has one matrix clause whose elements might be filled by other clauses. That is to say, there should be only one Main verb in the matrix clause regardless of the number of verbs in the embedded clauses since these embedded clauses fill the elements of the

matrix clause. Fawcett (forthcoming b, p. 25) defines an embedded clause as "a clause that fills an element of a higher unit in the structure of a sentence." What is called hypotaxis in the SG is equivalent to embedding in the CG. Moreover, the complex clause, on the other hand, consists of more than one matrix clause bound to each other by one of the co-ordinating conjunctions. Clause complex may contain embedded clauses filling its elements. What is known as parataxis in the SG is equivalent to what is called co-ordination in the CG. Examples (10), (11), and (12) below are cited from Fawcett (2000, p. 271) to show the clause types within the CG.

- (10) John [S] ran [M]away [MEx], and [L] Fred [S]stayed [M] behind [C].
- (11) John [S] thought [M] he would run away [C].
- (12) John [S] ran [M]away [MEx], because he was scared [A].

Halliday's SG views the examples above as complex in that the clauses in example (10) are paratactically related while the clauses in (11) and (12) are hypotactically related. Nevertheless, only example (10) is a complex clause in Fawcett's CG since it has two matrix clauses joined by the co-ordinating Linker 'and'. Thus, this complex clause consists of two Main verbs or Processes, namely 'ran away' and 'stayed'. On the contrary, the last two examples exemplify simple clauses because they contain one matrix clause each. In other words, the embedded clause 'because he was scared' fills the element of the Adjunct in the syntactic structure of the matrix clause (12) 'John ran away'. The other embedded clause, 'he would run away,' fills the element of the Complement in the syntactic structure of the matrix clause (11) 'John thought'. Thus, the first example that Halliday treats as a type of parataxis is treated as a type of co-ordination in the CG, while the last two examples described as two types of hypotaxis are analyzed as types of embedding.

3.3.5 Transitivity System Network in the CG

Instead of the three strands of meanings that Halliday suggested in the SG, discussed in Section 3.2.4., Fawcett (2005, 2008) has identified eight major metafunctions and three minor ones. These metafunctions are experiential, interpersonal, polarity, validity assessment, affective, logical relations, thematic and informational (the last two are equivalent to Halliday's 'Textual'). In addition to these eight major strands, three minor strands of meaning are proposed by Fawcett, namely, 'inferential', 'metalingual', and 'discourse organizational' (Fawcett, 2005, p. 10).

The system of Transitivity is one of the main strands of meaning in the clause that expresses the experiential metafunction, which analyses the clause into Participant Roles (PRs), Processes, and Circumstantial Roles (CR). It is defined as "the range of types of process that it is possible to express through the language concerned and the participants in each of those types of process" (Fawcett, 2005, p. 10). The term Process has an abstract sense and is a part of the semantic features of the clause. In other words, situation is used to refer to the semantic unit of the clause while the clause is the syntactic unit. Accordingly, Process is the pivotal element in the semantic unit of the situation, whereas the Main verb is the pivotal element in the syntactic unit of the clause (Fawcett, 2008, p. 48). A Participant Role is defined as "a role which we expect to occur in the clause, as a result of knowing what the Process is" (Fawcett, 2008, p. 138). The PRs are typically expressed in the Subject and the Complements. So Transitivity is syntactically realized by S M O. According to Fawcett (2008, p. 167), a Circumstantial Role is "any element that expresses an experiential meaning and is not a Process, a Participant Role or an Auxiliary." The CR is syntactically realized as the Adjunct of the clause. However, Circumstances are no longer a part of the Transitivity system in the CG because although some of these Circumstances occur with some types of Processes, their presence is still unpredicted by the Process (Fawcett, 2008, p. 148).

Fontaine (2008) points out that Transitivity functions as a base for the full analysis of the clause in any language. That is because only through the Transitivity system we can obtain an entire idea about the type of Process and the number and types of PRs involved in the situation. Section 3.3.5.1 below introduces the Process types and the configuration of the PRs associated with them.

3.3.5.1 Process types in the CG

The CG identifies six Process types: 'action' Processes, 'relational' Processes, 'mental' Processes, 'influential' Processes, 'event-relating' Processes, and 'environmental' Processes (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 52; Neale, 2017). A brief introduction of every Process type will be presented with a table that summarizes the main sub-types of each Process, if existing, along with the various configurations of its PRs.

(a) Action Processes

'Action' Processes, equivalent to Halliday's 'material Processes, involve a kind of physical or material action. However, it has one type called 'social' Processes which occur between two individuals expressing social action, such as 'greeting' or 'insulting', rather than 'material' action, such as 'hitting' or 'breaking'. Thus 'social action' Processes and 'material action' Processes have the same Participant Roles, which are Agent (Ag) and Affected (Af), but the difference between them lies in the sense associated with the Processes themselves realized in the Main verb (Neale, 2017). Table 3.2 below shows how 'action' Processes are differentiated by i) the number of PRs and ii) the type of the PRs. The underlined items are the PRs predicted by this type of Process.

Table 3.2: The system network for 'action' Processes with PR configurations

Process Type		PR Configurations	Examples
Action Processes		Ag + Pro	She runs to keep fit.
i)	Material Processes	Af + Pro one-role process	<u>The door</u> opened. <u>Her cat</u> has died.
	Trocesses	Ca + Pro	My leg hurts. The dome gleamed.
		Cre + Pro	The company came into being in 2001.
	OR	Ag + Pro + Af	<u>Ike</u> cut <u>the cake. He fired the manager.</u>
ii)	Social Processes	Ag + Pro + Cre two-role	<u>Ike</u> made/baked <u>a cake.</u>
		Ag + Pro + Ra process	<u>He</u> has climbed <u>the Matterhorn.</u> <u>She</u> plays <u>the</u> <u>harp.</u>
		Ag + Pro + Ma	<u>They</u> are behaving <u>badly.</u>
		Ag + Pro + Af + Ma three -role P	<u>She</u> treats/handles <u>him</u> <u>gently.</u>

As Table 3.2 shows, there are three types of 'action' Processes: a) the type that has only one PR that could be an Agent, Affected, Carrier, or Created as the first PR; the type that has two PRs that are an Agent as the first PR and an Affected or Created or Range or Manner as the second PR); the type that has three PRs. Thus, while in one-role Processes the first PR varies, the first PR in two-role Processes and three-role Processes is typically an Agent.

(b) Relational Processes

The second type of Process is the 'relational' Process, which is of five main sub-types: 'attributive' Processes, 'locational' Processes, 'directional' Processes, 'possessive' Processes, and 'matching' Processes (Neale, 2002, pp. 137-138). 'Relational' Processes are distinguished by the type of the first PR, i.e., whether it is a simple PR (simple Carrier) or a compound PR. Unlike the PR of Agent-Carrier which has a role in deciding the change of the event, Affected-Carrier occurs in the Process that indicates a change of state in which the Carrier has no responsibility in deciding such an event change. The

Compound PR is an important proposal introduced in the CG which has not been found in Halliday's SG. The term third party Agent is also introduced to refer to the Processes with three PRs, the second of which is the compound PR. This type of Process is termed third part Agent because the Affected-Carrier is added to a two-role Process making it a three-role Process. The Process types of 'locational' and 'directional' are not recognized in Halliday's system network but instead analyzed as circumstantial. For Fawcett, the reason for treating these Process types as 'locational' and 'directional' is that the PRs associated with them are inherent and predicted by the Process (Fawcett, 2011a, 2012b). Table 3.3 summarized the sub-types of the 'relational' Processes.

Table 3.3: The system network for 'relational' Processes with PR configurations

Process Type		PR Configurations		Examples
Relational Processes				
i)	Attributive Processes	Ca +Pro + At	[simple carrier]	Ivy is a/the year tutor / happy.
	Trocesses	It + Pro + At + Ca		It is <u>lucky</u> <u>that she is sensible.</u>
		Af-Ca +Pro +At	compound PR	<u>She</u> became <u>happier / a cashier.</u>
		Ag-Ca +Pro + At		<u>Ike</u> kept <u>quiet.</u>
		Ag + Pro +Af-Ca + At	[third party Agent]	<u>The war made them rich.</u>
ii)	Locational	Ca + Pro + Loc	[simple carrier]	<u>Ivy</u> is / lives / works in <u>Cardiff</u> .
Af-Ca + Pr		There + Pro + Ca + Loc	2	There's <u>a fly</u> in my soup.
		Af-Ca + Pro + Loc	compound PR	His luggage stayed in Cardiff.
		Ag-Ca + Pro + Loc_	•	<u>Ivy</u> remained <u>in Cardiff.</u>
		Ag + Pro + Af-Ca +	- Loc [third party	She kept him at home.
		Agent]		

iii)	Directional Processes	Ca + Pro + So and/ or Pa/Des [simple	The plains stretch (from the Appalachians) to the Rockies.
	Trocesses	Carrier]	Appaidemans) to the Rockies.
	Af-Ca + Pro + So and/ or Pa/Des		My suitcase has gone to Rome.
		Ag-Ca + Pro + So and/or Pa/Des	<u>Ivan</u> has reached <u>Moscow</u> /gone <u>to</u> <u>Moscow.</u>
		Ag + Pro+ Af-Ca + So and/or Pa/Des	They sent him to Sydney.
		Ag + Pro + Af-Ca + Af-So and/or Af-Pa/	They threw stones at us.
		Af-Des	
		Ag + Pro + Af-Des + Af-Ca (with)	<u>He</u> sprayed <u>the wall</u> with <u>red paint.</u>
		So/Pa/Des + there + Pro + Ag-Ca	<u>Into the clearing</u> there rode <u>a</u> fierce-looking knight.
		So/Pa/Des + there + Pro + Af-Ca	Out of the cauldron there arose a noxious cloud of steam.
		Ca + Pro + Pos [carrier-oriented]	<u>Ivy</u> has/lacks /needs <u>a car.</u>
iv)	Possessive Processes	Pos + Pro + Ca [possessed-oriented]	<u>It</u> belongs to <u>her.</u>
		Af-Ca + Pro + Pos/Af-Pos	<u>I</u> received/lost <u>the prize.</u>
		Ag-Ca + Pro + Pos/Af-Pos	<u>I</u> bought <u>a car</u> / got rid of <u>my cold.</u>
		Ag + Pro + Af-Ca + Pos/ compound PR	<u>He</u> gave <u>me</u> <u>his book/cold.</u>
		Af-Pos	
		Ag + Pro + Af-Pos/ Pos + Af-Ca [third	<u>He</u> gave <u>his book/cold</u> to <u>me.</u>
		party agent]	
		Ca + Pro + Mtch [simple carrier]	The key matches/fits the keyhole.
		Af-Ca + Pro + Mtch compound PR	<u>The oxygen</u> is combined with <u>the</u> hydrogen.
		Ag-Ca + Pro + Mtch	Eric married Kate. Eric and Kate married (each other).
		Ag + Pro + Af-Ca + Mtch [third party	Ike matched/fitted the drill to the
v)	Matching Processes	Agent]	hole.

As illustrated in Table 3.3 above, none of the 'relational' Processes has one PR. Each sub-type of the 'relational' Process has its patterning of PRs that reflects the semantics of its Process. In other words, whereas the first main PR of this type of Process could be either simple Carrier or compound PR, the second PR varies per the sub-type of the 'relational' Process. If the Process is 'attributive', the second PR will be Attribute (At);

if it is 'locational', the second PR will be Location (Loc); if it is 'directional', it could be Source (So), Path (Pa) or Destination (Des); in case it is 'possessive, it will be Possessed (Pos); and if it is a 'matching' Process, the second PR is Matchee (Mtch).

(c) Mental Processes

The third type of Process is the 'mental' Process, which has three sub-types: 'emotion' Processes, 'perception' Processes, and 'cognition' Processes (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 97). In 'cognitive' Processes, when Processes express a type of communication, they are known as 'communication' Processes that involve three inherent PRs. Like 'relational' Processes, these sub-types of 'mental' Processes contain at least two PRs. Besides, they are classified according to considerable differences between them, so every sub-type has a particular PR configuration.

Table 3.4: The system network for 'mental' Processes with the configurations of PRs

Process Type	PR Configurations	Examples
Mental Processes		
i. Emotion	Em + Pro + Ph [Emoter-oriented]	She loved/hated the movie.
Processes	Ph + Pro + Em [Phenomenon-	The movie delighted/upset her.
	oriented]	
a) Emotive Processes	It + Pro + Em + Ph	It pleases/worries <u>Ike</u> that Ivy is so
	Af-Em + Pro + Ph [compound PR]	rich. <u>Ivy</u> prefers <u>chocolate</u> to <u>toffee.</u>
	Em + Pro + Ph + Mtch	<u>Ike</u> fell in love with <u>Ivy.</u>
b) Desiderative Processes	Em + Pro + Ph	Ivy wants (to have) an ice cream./
		she wishes to be taller.
(ii) Perception	Perc + Pro + Ph	<u>She</u> saw/heard / felt <u>it.</u>
Processes	Ag-Perc + Pro + Ph	She looked at/listened to/felt it.
	Ag + Pro + Af-Perc + Ph	<u>He</u> showed <u>them</u> <u>the ring.</u>
	Ag + Pro + Ph + Af-Perc	<u>He</u> showed <u>the ring</u> to <u>them.</u>
	Cog + Pro + Ph	<u>I</u> think that Ivy is sensible.
iii) Cognition Processes	It + Pro + Cog + Ph	It seems (to me) that Ivy is sensible.
	Af-Cog + Pro + Ph	She realized/saw that she was late.
	It + Pro + Af-Cog + Ph	It struck me that she was sensible.
	Ag-Cog + Pro + Ph	<u>Ike</u> decided to visit Germany.
	Ag-Cog + Pro + Cre-Ph	He devised a new plan.
	Ag + Pro + Af-Cog + Ph	<u>I</u> told <u>you so</u> /that he was late.
	Ag + Pro + Ph + Af-Cog	She taught French to Fred.
-communication Processes	Af-Cog + Pro + Ag + Ph	Ivy heard from Fred about it.
	Af-Cog + Pro + Ph + Ag	Ivy heard about it from Fred.
	Ag-Cog + Pro + Ph + Mtch	<u>She</u> compared <u>him</u> with <u>her son.</u>

The 'emotion' Processes are of two sub-types: 'emotive' Processes and 'desiderative' Processes. The 'emotive' Processes describe how someone feels about an object or event.

In contrast, the 'desiderative' Processes describe the feeling of desiring that some event should or should have come about (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 98). Since both sub-types express feelings, they have the same PRs of Emoter (the one who feels) and the Phenomenon (the object or the event that is the focus of the feeling). However, they differ from each other in that the Phenomenon in 'emotive' Processes could be either an object or an event, while it is only an event in 'desiderative' Processes. A second difference is that the sequence of Ph + Pro + Em can occur in some of the 'emotive' Processes, but not in the 'desiderative' Processes (Fawcett, forthcoming c).

'Perception' Processes include those verbs that are related to senses, such as looking at, watching, listening to, thinking, smelling, and those which Halliday names 'Behavioral' Processes (Neale, 2002). In 'cognition' Processes, a sub-type known as 'communication' Process has three PRs of Agent + Affected-Cognizant + Phenomenon (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 110). In this sub-type, someone causes someone to know something. The Phenomenon here is filled by a nominal group, a clause (indirect report), or a direct report of a text (the message that occurs within the inverted commas).

(d) Environmental Processes

The fourth Process type is known as 'environmental' Processes, which are characterized by having no PR. Table 3.5 below shows the two types of the 'environmental' Processes, both of which contain only Processes.

Table 3.5: The system network for 'environmental' Processes with the configurations of PRs

Process Type	PR Configurations	Example
Environmental	It + Pro	It is raining/snowing.
Processes	It + Pro + ProEx	It was/remained sunny. It was/felt cold.

The first type of 'environmental' Process has only a Process, while the second includes a Process plus a Process Extension. The pronoun 'it' in the examples has no referent because we cannot ask such questions as 'What is raining?' or 'What is sunny?' Consequently, considering 'sunny' as an Attribute is illogical in a clause that has no Carrier as a referent, so it is analyzed as a Process Extension (ProEx), (MEx) at the level of form (Fawcett, forthcoming c). The study has named this type of Process 'zero-role' Processes due to the absence of any inherent PRs.

(e) Influential Processes

The fifth type of Process is the 'influential' Process, which includes an embedded event filling the second PR. It is defined as "a Process that influences another Process" (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 120). In other words, the 'influential' Process influences our interpretation of the Process in the dependent event. For example, in a clause such as 'She stopped visiting him', the stopping Process influences the visiting Process causing this event to cease. This type of Process is either one-role Processes or two-role Processes. In the two-role Processes, some sub-types of 'influential' processes inherently involve an Agent as the first PR because it influences, wholly or partly, the occurrence of the embedded event, for example, 'starting', 'continuing', or 'ceasing'. Other Processes have an Affected conflated with the Subject as the first PR since it does not control the embedded event, such as the Processes of 'failing' and 'succeeding', see Table 3.6 below.

Table 3.6: The system network for 'influential' Processes with PR configurations

Process Type	PR Configurations	Example
Influential Processes	Ag + Pro + Cre-Ph	Ivy started talking about her new friend.
	Ag + Pro + Ph	<u>Ivy</u> kept/stopped <u>talking</u> . <u>She</u> caused <u>him to miss</u> <u>it.</u>
	Af + Pro + Cre-Ph	The bough began to bend.
	Af + Pro + Ph	The girder went on / stopped bending.
	Cre-Ph + Pro	The party has begun.
	Ph + Pro	The match has ended. Mistakes do sometimes occur.
	It + Pro + Cre- Ph	It started to rain quite heavily.
	It + Pro + Ph	It stopped <u>raining</u> . It happened <u>that she was</u> <u>there.</u>

Fawcett (forthcoming c, p. 125) proposes five pairs of distinctive concepts that characterize 'influential' Processes as a sub-system network: a) one PR vs. two PRs, b) Agent vs. Affected as the first PR, c) overt Subject vs. covert Subject in the embedded clause, d) Phenomenon vs. Created-Phenomenon as the second PR, e) the congruent expression of the event as a clause vs. the incongruent expression of the event as a thing (nominalization that is realized in a nominal group) (Fawcett, forthcoming c, pp. 125-128).

(f) Event-relating Processes

The last type of Process is the 'event-relating' Process, in which both PRs are inherently events. Fawcett (forthcoming c) has given this type of Process ample space for description and discussion as a new proposed sub-network in the system network of Transitivity in English. According to him, the grammar related to these Processes has probably emerged because of being a part of the grammarians' interest in scientific

English in recent years. Carrier and Phenomenon or Created-Phenomenon are the main PRs in the sense that they both pass the relevant tests for these PRs. Fawcett emphasizes that even though many verbs that realize 'event-relating' Processes have the same forms as those belonging to other Processes, such as 'action', 'mental', and 'influential', two essential factors could help distinguish between them. The factors are that both PRs are events, and the clauses filling the PRs have met the criteria of the tests for the PRs. Table 3.7 below shows the configurations of the PRs of this type of Process.

Table 3.7: The system network for 'event-relating' Processes with PR configurations

Process Type		PR Configurations	Example
Event-relating Processes			
a)	Causal	Ca + Pro + Cre-Ph	Smoking causes/leads to aging of the skin / this.
		It + Pro + Cre-Ph + Ca	It makes <u>me feel happier that he'll be home soon.</u>
		Ca + Pro + Ph	<u>Hitler's death</u> ended <u>the war.</u>
b)	Inferential	Ca + Pro + Ph	His frequent errors suggest that he will lose the match.
c)	Temporal	It + Pro + Ph + Ca	It follows from <u>his errors</u> that he will lose the match.
		Ca + Pro + Ph	His visit to London coincided with the royal wedding.
d)	Comparison	Ca + Pro + Ph	Rowing a boat is like / differs from paddling a canoe.
e)	Simple co- occurrence	Ca + Pro + Ph	Smoking is associated with aging of the skin.

As Table 3.7 illustrates, 'event-relating' Processes are inherently two-role Processes. Fawcett divides them into five sub-classes, each of which expresses different semantics. The first sub-type is those Processes that reflect causal meaning which could be of either cause-to-effect, such as 'causing', 'allowing', 'preventing', 'affecting', 'ending', 'requiring', or effect-from-cause, such as 'result', 'stem from' (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p.

144). The other four sub-types are those Processes expressing inferential meaning, for instance, 'imply', 'entail', 'mean'; temporal meaning, such as 'precede', 'coincide with', 'follow'; comparative meaning, such as 'symbolize', 'resemble', 'differ from', 'contrast with'; and simple co-occurrence meaning, such as 'be associated with', 'co-occur with'.

3.3.6 Re-expression Tests for Participant Roles in the CG

As Transitivity is a complicating system network for most analysts, identifying the types of Processes and PRs is challenging. Therefore, Fawcett (2011a, forthcoming c) suggests that it is more workable to start with the identification of the RPs of the Process rather than the recognition of the Process types. He simply states that the categories of Process types are so broad that it would be hard to find tests that specifically address all Process types. He proposes seventeen re-expression tests for identifying the PRs. Neale (2002, p. 223) considers these re-expression tests similar to 'Halliday's 'props' regarding them as the most crucial tool for identifying the PRs and determining the Process type as well. They are called re-expression tests because they represent different ways by which the clause can be re-expressed to assist the analyst in determining the type of PRs involved. For example, the re-expression test for the Agent is 'What X did for Y was that', while 'What happened to Y was that....' is used to recognize the Affected, see Appendix (A).

3.4 Conclusion

This chapter has highlighted the fundamental foundations upon which both SFL approaches of the SG and the CG are based and developed. It has first outlined the principal axes of Halliday's SFG by which language is interpreted as a system of choices. It has briefly shed some light on the linguistic metafunctions of language that are the core of analyzing the language strands of meaning in SFL.

Then the chapter has discussed the CG approach, mapping it into two sections: the generative section and the descriptive one. The generative approach of CG is the abstract

and theoretical part that deals with how language is generated. In contrast, the descriptive approach is the practical and analytical part that an analyst applies in describing a language. Accordingly, more details have been given to the descriptive part in terms of the essential concepts and categories and the relationships that bound them together. The essential terminology has been explained, providing a concise discussion of the clause elements. The chapter has also demonstrated how the syntactic features are represented through the tree diagram. Finally, a brief and concise account of the various types of Processes and the different configurations of PRs have been offered with examples for each. However, it must be kept in mind that this chapter has presented only a small relevant portion of the SFL since it would be impossible to explain the entire theory in the body of this size-limited dissertation.

Following this chapter, Chapter 4 presents an overview of Arabic syntax. It offers a brief discussion of the most well-known traditional schools of Arabic syntax and the essential components of the simple clause structure in MSA. Thus, it focuses on the clause types, the fundamental concepts, and the principles that compose a well-formed clause. It ends with definitions of the three-word classes recognized in MSA.

CHAPTER 4: OVERVIEW OFARABIC SYNTAX

4.1 Introduction

This chapter offers an overview of Arabic syntax, starting with an introduction to the Arabic language varieties. Section 4.3 provides a brief theoretical background of the emergence of Arabic grammar, and Section 4.4 describes the grammar schools that dominated the Arabic linguistic theory, the characteristic features of each school, and the most standing grammarians. Then Sections 4.5 and 4.6 present a brief general idea about Arabic syntax by highlighting the clause structure, clause types, and the concepts that represent the basic principles in the Arabic linguistic theory. Section 4.7 offers a short explanation of how Arabic grammarians deal with the semantic aspects of the clause followed by discussing the difference between the major clause and minor clause in MSA and comparing it with that distinction in modern linguistics. Finally, no work in the syntax probably achieves success without shedding light on the word class of the language under investigation. Specifically, Section 4.9 is devoted to discussing the three-word classes in Arabic, namely nouns, verbs, and particles. Thus, this chapter is significant because it, as brief as possible, attempts to present the essential constituents and components of which Arabic grammatical structure is composed.

4.2 Arabic Varieties

Arabic is regarded as the largest member of the Semitic language family since it is spoken by around one hundred million people distributed in the whole world (Alduais, 2012). In general, the Arabic language is of three varieties. The first variety is the Classical or Old Arabic (CA) documented in the sixth century (Ryding, 2005). It is the language of the Quran, pre-Islam literature and poetry, and literature and poetry of the golden ages of Islam (Alduais, 2012; Bahloul, 2008; Ryding, 2005).

The second variety is Standard Arabic (SA) or Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), which is the official language of most Arabic States, literature, poetry, journalism, and broadcasting. In other words, this is the formal language that currently appears in daily newspapers, TV programs and news, academic or formal writings, school textbooks, and religious speeches. Both CA and MSA are relatively similar in dealing with syntactic linguistic issues. But they are quite different in terms of style and vocabulary (Ryding, 2005, p. 4). In other words, several differences exist between both varieties even though MSA is based on the phonology, syntax, and semantics of the CA (Bahloul, 2008). In addition to this, Alduais (2012, p. 504) also states that "MSA is different from the CA in that diacritics or case markers do not necessarily appear in all the words except in the ambiguous words and sentences whether in written or spoken cases."

The third variety is known as Spoken Arabic or Colloquial Spoken Arabic (CSA), which is of different spoken dialects that are geographically distributed. In other words, each dialect is spoken by people who live in the same region and have the same nationality. For example, the Arabic dialect spoken by the Yemenis is not the same as that spoken by the Egyptians or Syrians. Additionally, one Arabic dialect could have other various varieties spoken by people living in different districts of the same state.

4.3 The Emergence of Arabic Grammar

Despite being an ancient language, Arabic is a living language preserved from being dead because it is the language of the Arabs' religious book, the Quran. Historians credit abū al-Aswad al-Dū'alī as the founder of Arabic grammar because he was the first to distinguish between the different graphemes in the Arabic language by dotting them differently (al-Ṭanṭāwī, 1995, p. 26). It was stated that the Caliph 'Ali Ibn Abī Ṭālib inspired al-Dū'alī to develop Arabic grammar, especially when he noticed that اللحن (al-laḥn) (mistake) had appeared even in the reading of the Quran. Arab linguists used the

term اللحن (al-lahn) (mistake) to refer to the mistake or incorrect reading or speaking of Arabic. The interest of the Arab grammarians in studying Arabic purposefully started as an aim to learn the language of the Quran. Dayf (1968) pointed out that their studies were religiously and socially motivated by their attempts to preserve the language of the Quran from being lost or corrupted. With the rapid spread of the Islamic Empire, many non-Arabs embraced Islam, especially when Islam invaded different regions outside the Arabian Peninsula. This expansion made the Arabic language exposed to close contact with other variations and languages. That was a major reason for the emergence of much corruption in the way of reading and speaking the Arabic language by the new converts (al-Tantāwī, 1995; Dayf, 1968). When اللحن (al-lahn) (mistake) seemed to threaten the Arabic language, especially in the rural areas where Arabic was used to be spoken eloquently, Muslim scholars began their intensive efforts to preserve the Arabic language from being corrupted. They feared اللحن (al-laḥn) (mistake) to dominate the Arabic language and become common to the extent that it could influence the reading of the Quran. However, this interest later became a scholarly trend with its leading linguists, disciplines, methods, and followers. Owens (1988) considers the Arabic syntax as one of the greatest grammatical traditions even though most modern western linguists might not be acquainted with it. He argues that the Arabic grammatical theory remained unknown for a long time until the nineteenth century because it had no peer existing in Europe at that time. In the linguistic attempts to find a typical structure in the languages of the same family, Versteegh (1997a) argues that Arabic could be assumed the proto-Semitic language. Thus, a brief introduction to the Schools of Arabic Grammar is offered in the coming section.

4.4 The Schools of Arabic Grammar

Three schools of thought have dominated the Arabic history of linguistics due to their contributions that lasted for centuries. Other schools, i.e., the Andalusian School and

Egyptian School, were established upon the foundations of these principal schools (al-Tanṭāwī, 1995; Dayf, 1968). Owens (1988, p. 8) argues that the period that witnessed the most extraordinary flourishing of the Arabic grammar was that between the eighth and the end of the tenth centuries with the competition that appeared in Iraq between two famous schools of grammatical thought: the Baṣra School, whose grammarians are called the Baṣrans; and the Kūfah School, whose grammarians are known as and the Kūfans. Then these two schools later merged into one school in Baghdād known as the Baghdādian School (al-Tanṭāwī, 1995). Each school was named after the region where it was founded even though the grammarians who belonged to either school were not necessarily born in the region of that school. This historical background is significant as it briefly sheds light on the ancient description of the Arabic syntax, the type of Arabic variety the traditional grammarians focused on, and the sources of the data selected to examine different linguistic structures. These factors hopefully contribute to showcasing the different tones of the current study in terms of the language variety under investigation, the data collected, and the objectives addressed.

4.4.1 The Bşaran School

This grammatical school of thought was named after Baṣrah, a city in Iraq, where the Arabic grammar study was established for the first time. According to al-Ṭanṭāwī (1995), this school started with the great founder of Arabic grammar Abū al-Aswad al-Dū'alī and ended with al-Mubarrad. Importantly, al-Ṭanṭāwī (1995) attributes the remarkable school success to three main reasons. First, Baṣrah used to embrace Arabs displaced from the ancient Arabic tribes, such as Qays and Tamīm. The second factor that played a vital role in the influential dominance of the Baṣran School was the existence of "sūq almarbad" (marbad market), which was used by Arabs for literary sessions, seminars, narratives, and cultural completions. Third, Baṣrah enjoyed a distinctive geographical

location which made it a source of attraction for scholars, traders, new Islam converts, and people of different cultural backgrounds.

The Başrans were not only the traditional leaders of Arabic grammar but also the grammarians who first set up its basic rules and developed its theory and principles (Dayf, 1968). They were known for being very selective in choosing their instances. The texts of the Quran were the primary source of their data besides pre-Islamic poetry and the purist authentic Arabic narratives spoken by the original Bedouins. So, the Başran grammarians formulated the Arabic grammar to be compatible with the structure and rules in the Quran. Although they made use of القياس والتقويم (al-qiyās wa al-taqwīm) (analogy and causation) for their description of Arabic grammar, they prioritized what is spoken by authentic Arabs (original Bedouins) over القياس (al-qiyās) (analogy principle) because they believed that their Arabic language was the most eloquent (al-Ṭanṭāwī, 1995). For that reason, they rejected what contradicted the original Bedouins' speech and excluded what was spoken by the Arabic tribes that might have any connection with other dialects, considering them a corrupted source of data. The most prominent Başran grammarian considered the first to set up the formal Arabic grammar was Sībawayh through this book الكتاب (al-Kitāb) (the Book). Scholars and linguists have highly considered this book the oldest and most comprehensive grammar book in Arabic (al-Tantāwī, 1995; Dayf, 1968; Versteegh, 1997b). Other Basran grammarians who remarkably contributed to Arabic linguistics were al-Khalīl bin Ahmad, al-Akhfash, al-Māznī, al-Yazīdī, and al-Mubarrad.

4.4.2 The Kūfan School

After being dominated Baṣra city for about a century, a new school emerged in Kūfah, another city in Iraq, which was called the Kūfan School. Al-Rū'āsī is said to be the founder of this school (al-Ṭanṭāwī, 1995; Þayf, 1968). The reason for the Kūfans' late

interest in grammar was that their main interest was given to writing and reciting poetry, prose, and other literary works (Dayf, 1968). The fundamental knowledge of the grammarians of this school was shaped by the Başrans. In addition to their focus on the Quran, the Kūfans paid more attention to poetry than the Baṣrans did. This school of thought contributed to the development of Arabic grammar even though it established a pretty different approach from that of the Baṣran School. Unlike the Baṣrans who adopted a strict way of choosing their data and setting up Arabic grammatical rules, the Kūfans were more permissible because they described any narratives spoken, including those spoken by urban people. Thus, they prioritized القيام al-qiyās (the analogy), formulating their general structural rules on narratives and accounts even if they contradicted the basic known structures of the Arabic clauses (al-Tantāwī, 1995).

Moreover, al-Ṭanṭāwī (1995) claims that the Kūfan grammarians tended to contradict the formal Baṣrans' approach because they wanted to establish their own characteristic approach which could distinguish them from the Baṣrans who were regarded as the first and foremost leaders of the Arabic grammar. As a result, they attempted to analyze and interpret Arabic by applying new methods, provided various arguments to support their views, and developed new terminology to refer to some linguistic issues. The most outstanding Kūfan grammarians were Kisā'i, al-Farrā', al-Aḥmar, and Tha'lab.

4.4.3 The Baghdādian School

Despite the differences in describing some linguistic issues between both schools of thought, the basic principles of Arabic grammar remained similar in both schools (Owens, 1988). This led to the emergence of a new trend, which mixed the thoughts and views of both schools under the name of the Baghdādian School. This school was in Baghdad, which was the capital of the Abbasid Caliphate in Iraq. The Baghdādian grammarians critically analyzed the Baṣran and Kūfan works and arguments to establish views based

on objective analysis. They were interested in criticizing and identifying the correct rules and excluding what they viewed as being inappropriate by providing clear-cut evidence.

However, their attempts to be objective critics probably failed since some found themselves more biased toward one school over the other. Hence, al-Ṭanṭāwī (1995) classified them into three groups. The first group is those salient grammarians who preferred the Baṣran School, such as Ibn al-Sarrāj, al-Zajjājī, and Ibn Jinnī. The second group is the grammarians who were inclined to the Kūfan School, such as Ibn al-Anbārī. The last group stayed neutral and adopted both schools' views, such as Ibn Qutaybiyyah, al-Akhfash, and Ibn Kīysān.

4.5 Arabic Syntactic Clause Structure

Syntax usually attempts to study clause structure with a central focus on what makes up a grammatically meaningful clause. In Arabic, the well-formedness of a clause is based on the principle of إسناد (al-isnād) (predication/attribution). In general, Arabic linguistic theory emphasizes the importance of two components in a clause without which a clause is said to be grammatically inadmissible (al- Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996; Sībawayh, 1988). Any clause, whether nominal or verbal, should be composed of two indispensable elements: مسنداليه (musnad ilayhi) (predicated/attributed to), which is the Topic/Subject (musnad) (predicate/attribute), which the Predicate/Complement. In other words, مسنداليه (musnad ilayhi) (predicated/attributed to) is always a nominal: المبتدأ (al-mubtada') (Topic/Subject) in the nominal clause OR الفاعل (al-fā'il) (Subject) in the verbal clause. On the other hand, مسند (musnad) predicate/attribute) is الفعل (al-fi'l) (verb) in the verbal clause OR الخبر al-khabar (Predicate/Complement) in the nominal clause. Thus a grammatically meaningful clause is by no means composed of only two verbs, two particles, a particle, a noun, or a particle

and a noun (al- Sāmarrā'ī, 2007). Figures 4.1 and 4.2 below demonstrate predication in both types of clauses.

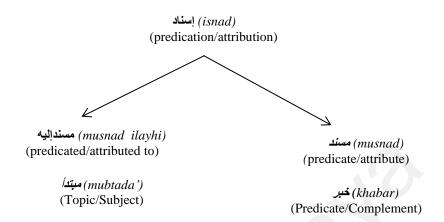


Figure 4.1: Indispensable elements in the nominal clause

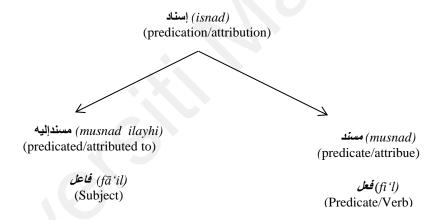


Figure 4.2: Indispensable elements in the verbal clause

This اسناد (isnad) (predication/attribution) is interpreted as the syntactic and semantic relations that relate both essential elements in Arabic clauses. If one of these essential constituents is not explicitly expressed in the structure of a clause, it must be assumed to form a grammatically admissible clause. Furthermore, Arabic grammarians have considered these two principal components of مسند (musnad) (predicate/attribute) and (musnad ilayhi) (predicated/attributed to) as the base of clauses, عمدة ('umdah) (basic), while the other elements in the clause as فضلة (faḍlah) (extra or optional), such as (al-maf'ūl bihi) (object), التمييز (al-tamyyiz)

(specifier), etc., (al- Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996; Sībawayh, 1988). The optional elements do not mean that these elements are dispensable because the object is a necessary element in the verbal clause whose verb is transitive. The word فضنة (faḍlah) (extra or optional) simply means that a well-formed Arabic clause can be constructed without these extra elements, while this clause is considered grammatically incorrect if it lacks either مسنداليه (musnad) (predicate/attribute) or مسنداليه (musnad ilayhi) (predicated/attributed to).

(al-Mubtad') (Topic/Subject) الفاعل (al-Fā'il) (Subject) الفاعل

Versteegh (1997a, 1997b) has pointed out that terminology is problematic when investigating Arabic in light of western theories. The initial nominal word in the nominal clause, which is known as المبتدا (al-mubtada') (Topic/Subject) is one of these problematic issues of terminology. Ibn al-Sarrāj (1996) treated الفاعل (al-fā'il) (Subject/Agent) in the verbal clause structure of (Predicate/Main verb +Subject) and المبتدا (al-mubtada') (Topic/Subject) nominal clause the of (Topic/Subject in structure Predicate/Complement) as equivalent constituents. Ibn al-Sarrāj (1996) and al-Mubarrad (1994) express this similarity in terms of the fact that both فاعل (fā'il) (Subject/Agent) and (mubtada') (Topic/Subject) need a Predicate as a requirement to construct a grammatically correct clause. That is, الفاعل (al-fā'il) (Subject/Agent) needs the Main while المبتدا (al-mubtada') (Topic/Subject) verb needs خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement). The difference between them lies in their positions in the clause. That is, المبتدا (al-mubtada') (Topic/Subject) precedes its Predicate while المبتدا (al $f\bar{a}$ 'il) (Subject/Agent) follows its. However, it should be emphasized that those concepts are never regarded as equivalent by some traditional grammarians even though some modern linguists employ the term Subject to refer to both elements (Peled, 2009).

Therefore, the Cardiff Grammar, as a functional-oriented theory in the SFG, gives the syntactic and the semantic aspects of language equal focus. The term Subject (S) will be used to refer to both مبتدا (mubtada') (Topic/Subject) and فاعل (fā'il) (Subject/Agent), and the semantic and functional roles will be added to distinguish whether that subject is Agent or Affected. The Subject to which the verbal action is predicated could be labeled S/Age or S/Af or S/Ca etc., and the same thing is applied to the Subject that occurs initially as مبتدا (mubtada') (Topic/Subject). The study believes that referring to the initial nominal in the nominal clause, i.e., مبتدا (mubtada') (Topic/Subject), as 'Topic' or as 'Theme' is inappropriate since these terms are employed for pragmatic purposes, and so 'Theme' could be used to express other constituents, such as Adjuncts when they are placed clause-initially.

Concerning خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement), the study describes it as both Predicate (P) and Complement (C) in terms of the syntactic description. That is because labeling the element of خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement) as (P<C) in the nominal clause distinguishes it from the syntactic element of Complements (C) (Objects) predicted by Processes in the verbal clause. In the CG, the Complement does not mean that it is an optional element in the clause, but rather it is essential in informing what the Subject is about.

4.6 Clause Types in MSA

Clause type has frequently been a controversial issue subject to different discussions and accounts by traditional grammarians and modern linguists alike (Peled, 2009). The Arabic linguistic theory assumes that the word occurring clause initially determines the type of clause in Arabic. This means that the discrepancy in the word-order patterns results in a different type of clause. According to al- Sāmarrā'ī (2007); Ibn al-Sarrāj (1996); Sībawayh (1988), a clause is classified into two basic types based on what the

clause's first word is. If the clause starts with a noun or a pronoun, it is called الجملة الإسمية (al-jumlatu al-ismiyyah) (the nominal clause); if it starts with a verb, it is called الجملة (al-jumlatu al-fi 'liyyah) (the verbal clause). In other words, a verb-initial clause is known as a verbal clause, while a noun-initial clause is known as a nominal clause. Particles such as interrogatives and negatives do not have any role in determining the type of clause when they occur initially since they do not constitute the indispensable components of the clause. Sections 4.6.1 and 4.6.2 briefly discuss the main principles of each type.

(al-Jumlatu al-Ismiyyah) (The Nominal Clause) الجملة الإسمية

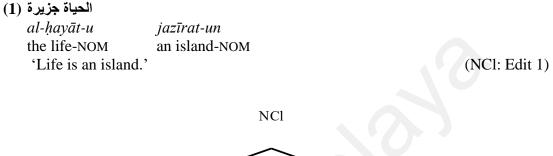
The nominal clause is that clause whose initial word is a noun (al- Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Ibn Hishām, 1991). The nominal clause consists of two essential components: مبتدا
(mubtada') (Topic/Subject), which is the definite nominal that occurs clause-initially, and خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement), which tells or informs something about the initial Subject. Predicates agree with Subjects in number, gender, and case.

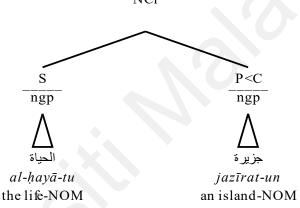
Both غير (mubtada') (Topic/Subject) and غير (khabar) (Predicate/Complement) are assigned في (raf') (the nominative case). Specifically, مبتدا (mubtada') (Topic/Subject) could be filled by a freestanding pronoun, a nominal, or a noun group. At the same time, the غير (khabar) (Predicate/Complement) could be a single item (noun or pronoun), a phrase, i.e., nominal group (ngp), prepositional group (pgp), or quality group (qlgp), or a clause, i.e., nominal or verbal. Ibn al-Sarrāj (1996) classifies غير (khabar) (Predicate/Complement) into a) a nominal Predicate that does not contain a pronoun

_

⁴ Since the framework adopted in this study is the CG, the term clause is used to replace the term sentence in all Chapters because the clause is regarded as the highest unit while the sentence is a placeholder for the function served by the clause in the discourse, (Fawcett, 2000, p. 192).

referring to the Subject and b) a clausal Predicate that contains a referential pronoun to the Subject. Since the Complement/Predicate could come in the form of a clause, it could be either a nominal clause or a verbal clause, as discussed in Section 4.6 above. In addition, the Subject must be definite while the Predicate is indefinite. Let us consider example (1) represented by Figure 4.3, which shows an unmarked nominal clause.





Life is an island.

Figure 4.3: A nominal clause with a nominal Predicate

Figure 4.3 shows the structural analysis of a nominal clause whose (mubtada') (Topic/Subject) and خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement) are nominal. The Subject is a definite noun because it is suffixed to the definite article -نا (al-) (the), whereas the Complement is indefinite. Examples (2) and (3) illustrate other patterns of the nominal clause but with clausal Predicates.

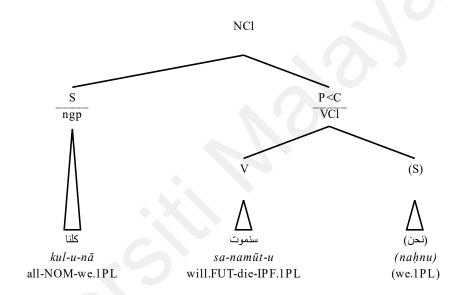
كلنا سنموت (2)

kul-u-nā sa-namūt-u all-NOM-we.1PL will.FUT-die-IPF.1PL

'All of us will die.' (NCl: Arti 5)

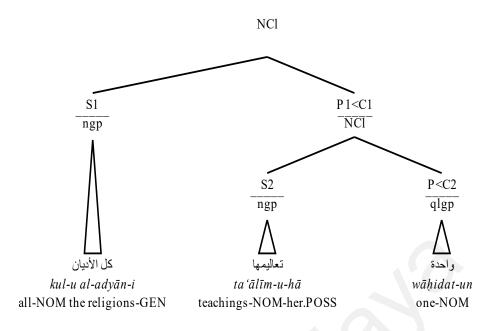
كل الأديان تعاليمها واحدة (3)

kul-ual- $ady\bar{a}n$ -ita ' $\bar{a}l\bar{t}m$ -u- $h\bar{a}$ $w\bar{a}h$ idat-unall-NOMthe religions-GENteachings-NOM-her.POSSone-NOM'All the religions, their teachings are one.'(NCl: Edit 1)



All ofus will die.

Figure 4.4: A nominal clause with a verbal clausal Predicate



All the religions, their teachings are one.

Figure 4.5: A nominal clause with a nominal clausal Predicate

Figure 4.4 represents the structural syntax of example (2) wherein the Subject occurs as a noun group $(kulu-n\bar{a})$ (all of us), and the Predicate occurs in the form of a clause. The clausal Predicate is here an embedded verbal clause that consists of a [isa-namūtu] (will-die) Main verb + isa (naḥnu) (we) Subject]. The embedded clausal Predicate must include a resumptive pronoun referring to the subject, which is reflected by the inflection of the verb (sa-namūtu) (will-die-we). The Subject is put between brackets as it is covert. The verbal clause here functions as a filler for the Predicate position, and it is in the position of (raf') (the nominative case) due to its occurrence in the form of a clause. Far away from the syntactic analysis given above, it is worthwhile to mention that SVO order has been thematically interpreted as placing more prominence on the Subject rather than the action itself (Bardi, 2008; Owens, 1988). To put it differently, the SVO is originally a VSO whose Subject has been moved to the clause-

initial position for being the thematic element that has been mentioned earlier in the discourse, an aspect that is not within the study scope.

Example (3) is functionally represented by Figure 4.5, showing the Predicate as an embedded nominal clause. The Subject is a noun group in the nominative case على الأديان (kulu al-adyāni) (all the religions), whereas the Complement is filled by a nominal clause that is made of [Subject تعاليمها (ta'ālīmu-hā) (her teachings) + Complement واحدة (wāḥidahun) (one)]. Thus, the second Subject-Complement structure fills the position of the Complement of the first Subject.

(al-Jumlatu al-Fi'liyyah) (The Verbal Clause) الجملة الفعلية

The verbal clause, on the other hand, is that clause whose initial word is a verb (al-Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Ibn Hishām, 1991). It has the syntactic form of VSO word order in which the Subject must follow the Main verb. If the Subject occurs in a preverbal position, the clause is said to be a nominal clause. So, the initial noun is interpreted as 'بيتار (mubtad') (Topic/Subject) whose Complement is filled by a verbal clause (al-Sāmarrā'ī, 2007), as the clause in example (2) shown in Figure 4.4. The subject in the verbal clause can be a noun or noun phrase/group, a freestanding pronoun, an attached pronoun (morpheme) to the verb, or a pro (null/hidden). The Subject is an obligatory element assigned عن (raf') (the nominative case). Therefore, a clause is viewed grammatically inadmissible if it has no subject to which the verb is predicated. In case the subject is not explicitly realized in the surface structure of the clause, the subject must be assumed in its underlying structure. Examples (4) and (5) below are unmarked verbal clauses with VSO with the difference that the Subject in the second example is pro.

حققت اللأهرام أحلامنا (4)

ḥaqqaq-atal-Ahrām-uaḥlām-a-nāachieved-PER.3FSGal Ahrām-NOMdreams-ACC-our.POSS

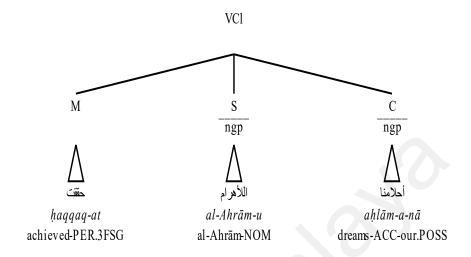
'Al-Ahrām achieved our dreams.'

(NCl: Edit 2)

نطم بالسيارة..... (5)

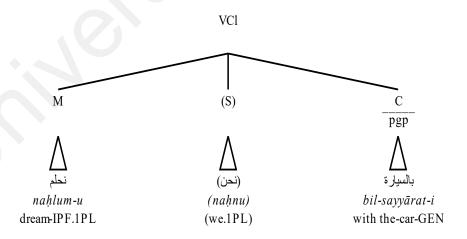
naḥlum-u bil-sayyārat-i dream-IPF.1PL with the-car-GEN

'We dream about cars....' (NCl: Edit 2)



Al-Ahrām achieved our dreams.

Figure 4.6: A verbal clause with an overt nominal Subject



We dream about cars.

Figure 4.7: A verbal clause with a covert Subject.

Example (4), shown in Figure 4.6, exemplifies a verbal clause composed of the Main verb, Subject, and Complement. The Subject is a noun group in the nominative case, while the Complement is another ngp in the accusative case. Therefore, both Subject and Complement are overtly realized. On the other hand, Figure 4.7 demonstrates the structure of example (5) wherein the Subject does not occur on the surface of the clause structure. So, it is assumed as the pronoun (we) to display a correct verbal clause. Likewise, Chapter 7 will present examples in which Subjects are covert but assumed in the functional representation of the analyzed examples.

According to traditional Arabic syntax, verbs could also have other Complements or pseudo Complements because these Complements come post-verbally in the accusative case (Owens, 1988, pp. 220-223). For instance, such Complements are المقاول (ḥāl) (condition or adverb of manner), مفعول الأجله (maf'ūlun li'jlih) (circumstance/adverb of reason), غلوف دمان (zarafu makān) (circumstance/adverb of place), ظرف دمان (zarafu zamān) (circumstance/adverb of time), تمييز (tamyyiz) (specifier), استثناء (maf'ūlun ma'ah) (accompaniment object), مطلق مفعول (maf'ūlun ma'ah) (accompaniment object), مطلق مفعول (absolute object). However, these elements do not necessarily need to be analyzed as Complements of the Main verb, Process in terms of the Transitivity system network because the functional label of Complement (C) in the CG is only given to the element that is inherently predicted by the Main verb.

4.7 Semantic Aspects in the Arabic Syntax

Versteegh (1997b) describes Arabic grammar as formally oriented, emphasizing that traditional grammarians devoted most of their descriptions to the syntax of Arabic at the expense of the other linguistic areas. However, the Arabic linguistic theory has witnessed a shift from a total focus on formal syntactic analysis to the description of some semantic aspects. This was achieved in the late 12th century by other linguists, such as al-Sakkākī,

المعاني Ibn Jinnī, and al-Jurjānī (Owens, 1988). These new disciplines are known as علم المعاني ('ilmu al-ma'ānī) (the science of meaning), علم البيان ('ilmu al-bayān) (the science of rhetoric), علم البلاغة ('ilmu al-istidlāl) (the science of logical deduction), and علم البلاغة ('ilmu al-balāghah) (the science of metaphors).

In this new phase of Arabic linguistic theory, the semantic implication of word order variation and the context have been viewed as having direct roles in determining the clause meaning. The total meaning of a clause does not only depend on the sense of its individual words and their grammatical relations, but rather on its contextual, textual, and communicative meanings. According to Kamel (2006), function as a curtail clause aspect has taken its status beside form. Consequently, traditional grammarians have pointed out that a change in the sequence of the clause elements implies a change in the communicative purpose of such a clause. For instance, al-Jurjānī (1984) has allocated more importance to meaning over form and to pre-posing over postposing. He emphasizes that putting an element in the early position of a clause indicates the prominence and importance of such an element regardless of its syntactic structure.

Despite being in a partial parallel with Halliday's functional theory, the Arabic grammarians' attempts to provide purely semantic interpretations of Arabic linguistics have been described as unsophisticated (Bardi, 2008). Owens (1988, p. 263) also states that although the Arabic traditional theory grew outside the western intellectual theory, Arabic grammarians have not completely succeeded in avoiding the interface between syntax and semantics, ending in an unsolved discussion of semantic linguistic issues and repeating the same conventional labels.

4.8 Major Clause vs. Minor Clause in MSA

According to the traditional Arabic theory, the term sentence is mainly used to denote both sentence and clause (Owens, 1984). Traditional grammarians made a distinction

between two concepts known as الجملة الكبرى (al-jumlatu al-kubrā) (the major clause) and الجملة الصغرى (al-jumlatu al-ṣughrā) (the minor clause). To illustrate, a nominal clause could consist of more than one predicative relation whose structure is composed of مسند (musnad) (predicate/attribute) and مسند (musnad ilayhi) (predicated/attributed to). In other words, the clause that contains more than one مسند (musnad) (predicate/attribute) and مسند (musnad) (predicate/attribute) and الجملة الكبرى (musnad ilayhi) (predicated/attributed to) is called الجملة الكبرى (al-jumlatu al-kubrā) (the major clause), which is equivalent to the modern term 'matrix clause' in the Cardiff Grammar, see Chapter 3. On the contrary, the clause that is embedded in this matrix clause is called الجملة الصغرى (al-jumlatu al-ṣughrā) (the minor clause), which is equivalent to the term 'embedded clause' in Cardiff Grammar. In other words, the clause whose Predicate is filled by an embedded clause is the major clause, while the embedded clausal Predicate is the minor one. Examples (2) and (3) illustrate such a relationship as shown by Figures 4.4 and 4.5 above.

4.9 Word Classes in MSA

Determining a word class is essential to place it correctly in different contexts. In MSA, a clause type is identified when the class of the word that occurs clause initially is said to be a noun or a verb. In reviewing the traditional grammarians' writings about the division of Arabic word classes, traditional grammarians provided explanations of these word classes from the three linguistic levels: morphological, semantic, and syntactic (Owens, 1988). Traditional grammarians used these three linguistic levels to describe the defining features of Arabic word classes since they realized that setting up specific criteria from one linguistic level, such as semantic, might not be enough to differentiate a word class from the others. That is to say, each category or word class is marked by certain properties and criteria that distinguish it from the other categories; however, some of these criteria and properties fail to be applied to all the items of a specific word class (Owens, 1988). In a nutshell, Arabic words are categorized into three-word classes; namely

 $(asm\bar{a}')$ (nouns), أفعال (af'āl) (verbs), and حروف (hurūf) (particles). The grammarians who came after Sībawayh from the Baṣran and Kūfan Schools followed this classification elaborating the properties of these word classes further.

4.9.1 Verbs

Verbs can be defined as "those words which denote a meaning (action) and a tense" (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996, p. 38). The verb's root implies the action of the verbs, while the forms of the verbs indicate the tense and aspect. The verbal system in MSA is, in general, characterized by its inflectional morphology. That is, all inflected verbs are derived from a basic discontinuous consonantal root ranging from three to five (Bahloul, 2008, p. 29). These inflectional patterns or conjugations are represented by their suffixes and prefixes, revealing their finiteness between perfective (past), completed action, and imperfective (present), reoccurrence of the action in the actual world. For example, the verb كت (kataba) (write) is originally made up of the triliteral consonantal radicals k-t-b, which implies the action of writing. But when it is put in a tense as the past, the vowels are added to form its past pattern كت (k-a-t-a-b-a) (wrote), present patter بيكت (ya-kt-u-b-u) (is writing), and future pattern

Verbs are also strong governors as they govern more than one element. They govern the Subject assigning it the nominative case and the Complement assigning it the accusative case. Thus, verbs in MSA can never be assigned the genitive case. They are basically مبنية (mabniyyah) (uninflected/indeclinable). The past perfective and the imperative verbs are مبنية (mabniyyah) (uninflected) while the imperfect verbs are مبنية (mu'rabah) (inflected/declinable). Three mode cases appear at their ends according to the particle preceding them, as Table 4.1 demonstrates.

Table 4.1: Imperfect verb mode cases, adapted from (Versteegh, 1997a, p. 79)

Mode case as a final vowel sound	Mode case as a diacritical mark	Mode cases	Example
-u	al-ḍamm	indicative mode (raf')	yaktub- u (he writes)
-a	al-fatḥ	subjunctive mode (nașb)	<i>yaktub-a</i> (that he writes)
-Ø	al-jazm	jussive mode (waqf)	yaktub (he write)

These three-mode cases occur only in the imperfect/present tense verb form when preceded by a particle that acts upon it. If the imperfect verb is preceded by neither a jussive particle nor a subjunctive particle, it is in the indicative mode assigned the nominative case (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996). When a subjunctive particle precedes the verb, it causes it to be in the subjunctive mode assigning it the accusative case that is represented by the last vowel –a; when a jussive particle precedes the verb, the verb has no vowel sound at its ends, i., e., السكون (al-sukūn) (Ø-ending). Therefore, these modes are non-finite as tense is inferred from context and other parts of the clause (Ryding, 2005, p. 53).

In terms of morphology, the imperfect verbs are prefixed by four morphemes that represent personal subject pronouns; namely va- (third-person masculine/feminine singular/dual/plural), ā- (first-person masculine/feminine singular), ta- (second-/thirdmasculine/feminine singular/dual/plural), (first person and naperson masculine/feminine plural) (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996). Regarding the perfect verbs, the personal subject pronouns are always suffixed to them, for example, کتبنا (katab-nā) (wrote-we), كتبو (katab- \bar{u}) (wrote-they), and كتبت (katab-at) (wrote-she). Consequently, verbs in MSA are inflected to indicate: voice (active or passive), tense (past, present, or future), aspect (perfect or imperfect), number (singular, dual, plural), gender (male or female), person (first, second or third), mode (indicative, subjunctive, or jussive), and transitivity (transitive or intransitive) (Ryding, 2005). Moreover, they are capable of forming nominalized verbs, such as اسم المفعول (ismu al-fā 'il) (active participle) اسم المفعول (ismu al-fā 'il) maf'ūl) (passive participle), المصدر (al-maṣdar) (gerund), الصفة المشبههة باسم الفاعل (al-sifatu al-mushabahatu bi-'ismi al-fā'il) (active participle-like adjective), such as حسن (ḥasuna) (much beautiful), and اسم الفعل (ismu al-fi'l) (verb-like noun), which functions as imperative verbs, such as رويدك (rūwaydaka) (slow-down-you).

4.9.2 Nouns

A noun is defined as a word that denotes a particular individual meaning in itself (Ibn Yaʻīsh, n.d.). It is argued that nouns are regarded as the most central category in the Arabic language on the ground that a well-formed clause can never be composed without a noun. Specifically, some nominal clauses could be compiled without verbs, but verbal clauses must include at least one noun to be grammatically meaningful. On the other hand, Ibn al-Sarrāj (1996, p. 75) has given verbs special attention by classifying them according to their meaning. He prioritizes verbs over nouns since wherever verbs exist in a clause, they govern nouns assigning them either the nominative case as Subjects or the accusative case as Complements and $\dot{\omega}\omega$ (zurūf) (circumstantials/adverbs).

Moreover, nouns are the only word class that is (mu'rabah) (inflectional/declinable) since they must occur in the three cases; namely, nominative when they are Subjects, accusative when they are Complements, and genitive when they are complements of prepositions or the second element in a possessive construction. Unlike verbs, they can never occur in the jussive case. Generally, there are four grammatical categories applied to nouns: gender, number, case, and definiteness.

For traditional grammarians, there are typical properties that characterize nouns from the other word classes. First, nouns can occur as Subject (Agent) or Complement (Affected) while verbs and prepositions cannot. Second, it is the only category that is affixed with the definite article *al*-, for example, (*al-kitāb*) (the book). Third, when nouns are indefinite, a double diacritical mark (-n) occurs at the end of this word called

(tanwīn) (nunation). For example, the word عتاب (kitab) (a book) could appear with different nunation at its end according to its position in the clause: (dammatayn) (two dammas) as in بناب (kitāb-un), or كتاب (kitāb-un), or كتاب (kitāb-in). Fourth, it is the only word class that is assigned the genitive case when occurring after prepositions or in possessive construction as المضاف (al-muḍāf ilayh) (the possessor). In the possessive construction, the first element المضاف al-muḍāf (the possessed) obtains its function according to its position in the clause, so it could appear in the nominative, accusative, or genitive case. On the contrary, the second element (al-muḍāf ilayh) (the possessor) is always assigned the genitive case. Finally, it could be a vocative; for example, in a clause like المضاف (yā sayydī) (O master) the vocative particle (yā) (O) precedes the noun المختاف العنوية (sayydī) (master). The property of being a vocative is neither of verbs nor of particles.

The category of nouns includes a large number of sub-classes: "pronouns, common nouns, proper nouns, numerals, adjectives, demonstratives, and relative pronouns" (Owens, 1988, p. 127). In addition to that, (al-zurūf) (circumstantials), (adverbs of place and time), are also sub-classes of nouns in the sense that they can function as Subjects, Agents, or Complements (Sībawayh, 1988, p. 216). The three case endings can occur at the end of these circumstances according to their positions in the clause. Figure 4.8 below shows the various sub-types of nouns in MSA.

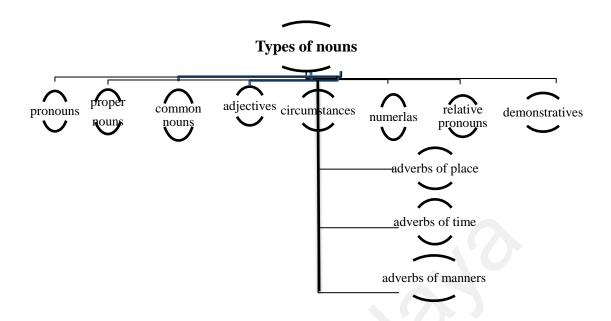


Figure 4.8: Sub-types of nouns in MSA

4.9.3 Particles

Ibn Yaʻīsh (n.d., p. 22) defines particles as "that word that has a meaning in relation to another word than itself". Ibn al-Sarrāj (1996, p. 40) defines them as "the words that can neither be a Predicate nor be informed about." They cannot stand by themselves to function either as a Subject or a Complement; instead they must occur with nouns or verbs to obtain meaningful function. Like verbs, they are مبنية (mabniyyah) (uninflected/indeclinable). Particles are important governors since they govern both nouns and verbs, bringing about a change in their case endings. In general, particles are classified into three classes based on their inherent function as governors. Figure 4.9 below presents these three classes.

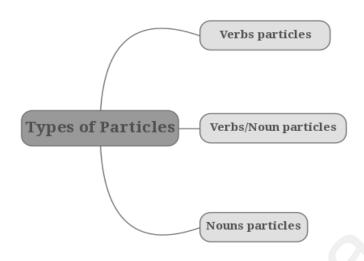


Figure 4.9: Main types of particles in MSA

As Figure 4.9 illustrates, the first class is those particles that occur only with nouns. For example, prepositions of place and time govern only nouns, assigning them the genitive case. The second class is those which occur only with verbs. For instance, particles as $\dot{\psi}(an)$ (that), $\dot{\psi}(lan)$ (never), and $\dot{\omega}(kay)$ (to) govern only verbs assigning them the accusative case. The third class occurs with both nouns and verbs, and thus they are not governors. For example, the particles $\dot{\omega}(m\bar{a})$ (not) and $\dot{\omega}(hal)$ (yes-no marker) do not govern the nouns and verbs before which they occur (Owens, 1988).

Ibn al-Sarrāj (1996) determines eight basic positions based on their functions: a) governors with specific functions, b) conjunctions that join words, verbs, or clauses, or c) extra elements. First, a particle could be placed initially attached to a noun only, such as the definite article الله (al-) (the). Second, it could precede a verb only, such as the future marker سوف (sawfa) or سوف (sa-) (will/shall). The particles الله (al-) (the) attached to the nouns and the particles سوف (sawfa) or سوف (sawfa) or سوف (sawfa) or mouns and the particles على (al-) (the) particle gives the noun the property of definiteness while the particles سوف (sawfa) or سوف (sawfa) or سوف (sawfa) indicate the verbs future tense.

Third, particles could be used as conjunctions to join nouns, such as the particle \mathfrak{g} (wa) (and) and \mathfrak{g} (aw) (or). Fourth, they could join verbs, such as the particle \mathfrak{g} (wa) (and) and \mathfrak{g} (but), etc. Fifth, it could be used to join a noun with a verb, for example, the particles \mathfrak{g} ($il\bar{a}$) (to), \mathfrak{g} (min) (from), \mathfrak{g} ('an) (about). Sixth, it could enter a clause changing it from declarative into an interrogative, for instance, \mathfrak{g} (hal) (yes-no marker), or from positive into negative, for instance, the particle \mathfrak{g} ($m\bar{a}$) (not). Seventh, it could join clauses, as is the case with co-ordinated and subordinated clauses. Finally, it could be extra having no grammatical function in the clause.

4.10 Conclusion

This chapter is interested in offering a brief overview of the Arabic syntax. It first has shed light on the three varieties of the Arabic language, presenting the differences that characterize each variety. Then, it has shown how the interest in studying the Arabic syntax has commenced and then gradually developed to have different schools of thought, each of which has its distinctive ideas, principles, and arguments. The basic structure of clauses in MSA has been described to offer a comprehensive picture of what makes a grammatically well-formed clause. After that, the chapter has explained the binary types of the simple clause in MSA, known as the nominal clause and the verbal clause, to give a sufficiently clear idea of the types of clauses considered for the analysis.

Then, the interest in studying the semantic aspects of the clause structure in Arabic has been given a small space for discussion. Following this, a distinction between الجملة الكبرى (al-jumlatu al-kubrā) (the major clause) and الجملة الصغرى (al-jumlatu al-ṣughrā) (the minor clause) has been made to set specific criteria on where a clause starts and where it ends and compare it with the modern distinction made between the matrix clause and the embedded clause in the CG. The remainder of this chapter has offered a short introduction

to the three-word classes in MSA and the characteristics and the various types of each word class, i.e., verbs, nouns, and particles.

Following this chapter, chapter 5 describes the methodology utilized to conduct the current study. It explains the study design and the criteria adopted to select, categorize, analyze, and describe the data under investigation.

CHAPTER 5: METHODOLOGY

5.1 Introduction

This chapter addresses the methodology used to conduct the current study. It first presents the research design adopted in Section 5.2, and then it introduces the criteria and methods utilized for collecting and selecting the data. Section 5.5 explains the methods used to describe the selected data, i.e., transliteration, translation, and tree diagram. After that, Section 5.6 is devoted to presenting the steps employed for the semantic and syntactic analysis of the selected data. The last section, i.e., Section 5.7, offers the stages and procedures undertaken to identify, classify, analyze, and describe each extracted example, whether nominal or verbal in MSA. This chapter is crucial as it shows the study design and methods employed to answer the research questions.

5.2 Research Design

In a study concerned with exploring a linguistic phenomenon, the qualitative approach is primarily used as its method of inquiry (Creswell, 2009; Neuman, 2014). Within the qualitative approach, the explorative descriptive method has been employed to carry out this study. Fawcett (2011a, p. 4) distinguishes between the descriptive framework and the description of a language. According to this distinction, the descriptive framework provides the necessary categories that have been derived from the full linguistic description of a language. On the contrary, language description results from applying such categories of theory for the analysis of that language. The descriptive framework on which this study is based is the CG model of the SFG. The current study has chosen the CG to investigate the simple clause in MSA to provide an account of its syntactic features and match these syntactic features with the semantic roles of the Transitivity system network. This approach has been proved to achieve a higher degree of validity and reliability (Fawcett, 2011a, p. 4), a claim that would be assessed in this study.

5.3 Data Collection

Since the study is concerned with examining the syntactic features and semantic properties of the simple clause in MSA by adopting the CG, the most suitable way to have authentic and naturally occurring instances of the simple clause in MSA is to utilize the written texts of newspapers. Unlike the grammarians who based their syntactic analysis on selected examples from previous books (Cantarino, 1974), newspaper articles reflect authentic data as they display the actual MSA in use. They are characterized by being an accessible and valuable source of linguistic data (Fontaine, 2008). Moreover, Fontaine (2008, p. 202) emphasizes that, unlike spoken data, working on written data could save time and work invested in that they do not need any transcription before the process of analysis; they do not need the presence of the researcher to observe the participants' linguistic phenomenon; they do not include any non-verbal communication, such as gestures, postures, and facial expressions. However, analyzing written data is challenging because no information is provided about the speaker or the listener (Fontaine, 2008, p. 202).

Accordingly, the data collected consisted of five editorials and five articles selected from ten different newspapers in five Arabic-speaking countries, as shown in Table 5.1 below. The total number of simple clauses selected, classified, and analyzed was (218) (140 were verbal, and 78 were nominal). However, the number of the clauses selected to be syntactically and semantically represented by the tree diagram was a total of (81): (35) simple nominal clauses and (46) simple verbal clauses. Even though the sample size might be quite small taken from limited types of registers, it is considered sufficient to achieve the study's objectives which aim at matching the syntax of the simple nominal and verbal clauses with only one strand of meaning, which is Transitivity, and examine reversibility in verbless NCls. In addition, in similar studies that focused on one or two strands of meaning, a limited sample size was also utilized. For instance, a study done by

Potter (2016) used 14 reports (7 reports in English and 7 in Arabic) to compare and analyze the thematic and informational structures of English and Arabic clauses, which is close to this study's sample. Similarly, Aziz (1988b) used only a narrative paragraph selected from an Arabic novel called *Awlādu Ḥāratinā* (Children of our neighborhood) to analyze the thematic metafunction, i.e. theme-rheme organization. Finally, unlike the studies that examine a smaller class of units or a specific linguistic structure that might rarely occur or might not occur at all in some texts, the study's concern is to investigate the simple clause structure, which is the central unit existing in all types of texts and registers, including the newspapers articles selected here.

Table 5.1: Names of the newspapers selected as the source of data

	Country	Editorials	Articles		
1-	Bahrain	Edit اخبار الخليج (Akhbār al-Khalīj)	Arti 1 الوطن (al-Waṭan)		
		http://www.akhbar- alkhaleej.com/	http://alwatannews.net/		
2-	Egypt	Edit 2 اليوم السابع (al-Yyawm al-Sābi ')	(Ṣawt al-Umah) صوت الأمة Arti 2		
		https://www.youm7.com/	http://www.soutalomma.com/		
3-	Kuwait	Edit 3 الرأي (al- Raʾī)	Arti 3 الجريدة (al-Jarīdah)		
		http://www.alraimedia.com/	http://www.aljarida.com/		
4-	Morocco	Edit 4 الصباح (al-Ṣabbaḥ)	Arti 4 النهار (al-Nahār)		
		https://assabah.ma/	http://www.annahar.ma/		
5-	Qatar	Edit 5 العرب (al- 'arab)	Arti 5 الوطن (al- Waṭan)		
		http://www.alarab.qa/	http://www.al-watan.com/		

The first five texts on the left column are editorials selected based on some criteria. First, they are the first editorials written and published for the year 2018 in daily newspapers. Editorials do not usually have a specific date to be published since some of them are published either monthly or weakly, while others are published every two weeks. Second, they are selected from newspapers that have a specific column known as editorial

or the editor's article. They are written by the editor who usually discusses general issues, including world news. Third, they are accessible online since these newspapers provide an online archive of all the issues published.

The second five texts on the right column are random articles gathered from other daily newspapers published in the same countries. These articles are selected from these newspapers almost for the same reasons mentioned above. However, the selection of these articles has been based on the clause structures of these articles. In other words, the researcher has attempted to avoid the articles that report world news and decided to deliberately select specific articles that reflect the diversity of syntactic structures so that as many various clause constructions as possible are analyzed and described.

5.4 Data Selection

Considering the three varieties of the Arabic language introduced in Chapter 4, Section 4.2, the Arabic variety selected for conducting the current study is Modern Standard Arabic (MSA); it is the current official language used for academic and formal purposes in everyday journalism, TV programs, teaching materials, and modern literature and poetry. Moreover, the use of Classical Arabic (CA) is usually restricted to the religious domain. Being the language of the Quran, CA has frequently been the subject of research and analysis by traditional grammarians and linguists for centuries (Versteegh, 1997b). This fact makes MSA the concern of this research.

The researcher analyzed all the simple nominal and verbal clauses in the selected editorials and articles (see Appendix B); however, not all clauses were extracted for the final functional syntactic representation via the tree diagram. The clauses that displayed identical syntactic structures and those stated repeatedly are quantitatively taken into consideration, but a few of each type were syntactically and semantically represented. Additionally, since the study centers on providing a detailed description of the structure

of the simple declarative clause (information giver in terms of the CG), interrogative (information seeker), imperatives, and exclamatory clauses were excluded in this study. However, the researcher used only a few examples of imperatives when there was no declarative clause to depict the linguistic issue under investigation. The long simple clauses that contained more than two embedded clauses were not functionally analyzed and represented. Therefore, the researcher sometimes modified some clauses and rarely extracted some matrix clauses, ignoring the embedded clause for their length and irrelevance to the issue being discussed. In addition to that, the clauses that are considered extracts from CA, such as the Quranic verses, Ḥadīth, or pre-Islam literature, were not included in the analysis, and so were the clauses from Colloquial Spoken Arabic.

5.4.1 Criteria for the Simple Clause Selection

There are three criteria followed to ensure accurate selection of the simple clause concerning clause boundaries, the simple clause structure, and the type of the simple clause. The first criterion is about determining the boundaries of the simple clause. Deciding on the boundaries at which a simple clause starts and ends is challenging for linguists interested in Arabic syntax (Bardi, 2008). Holes (2004, p. 251) pointed out that Arabic lacks the 'fully standardized system of punctuations' that facilities specifying the clauses from one another. It is characterized by having long sentences with many embedded clauses that make the analysis long and complicated, as is the case with the data of this study collected from newspaper texts. Unlike English, where sentences with giving information structure are generally separated by a period or a semicolon, Arabic sentences are written in succession. That is, sentences are usually separated from one another by a comma when their indispensable elements are fully recognized, conveying a communicative thought. The period or full stop is generally placed after a group of successive clauses that have achieved their communicative value in presenting one idea. Therefore, the criteria used to determine the clauses' boundaries were syntactic and

semantic in nature, i.e., the structural independence and the communicative thought they achieved. So, the start and end of a clause were specified once the essential elements of that clause, i.e., (Subject + Predicate) in nominal clauses and (Predicate + Subject) in verbal clauses, were identified providing that they conveyed complete meaning.

The second point is about deciding the structure types of clauses, whether they are simple or complex. This study has adopted the CG taxonomy that classifies clauses into simple and complex (co-ordinating); therefore, the criteria employed to determine whether a clause was simple or not were also syntactic and semantic in nature. The pairs joined by one of the Arabic co-ordinators حروف العطف (hurūf al-'atf) (co-ordinating conjunctions), such as $\psi(bal)$ (but), $\psi(aa)$ (and), $\psi(aa)$ (so), and $\psi(aaa)$ (or), were excluded from the analysis because they result in complex types of clauses. Semantically, if these conjunctions were not interpreted as co-ordinating in some clauses, the clauses were selected for the analysis as simple clauses in which embedded clauses functioned as their elements. Moreover, the clauses preceded by a period or comma and initially introduced by these co-ordinators were analyzed and described as part of the data. That reason is that these co-ordinators were used as discourse markers joining these clauses with the previous discourse. So, these initial co-ordinators were not given much attention, especially when doing the functional analysis. Due to the limited size of the collected data, the researcher modified some clauses only in a few cases once it was necessary to explain and compare specific linguistic issues to others.

The last worthwhile criterion is concerned with the concept of the nominal clause adopted in this study. Unlike some studies that restrict nominal clauses to these verbless clauses that do not include any verb in their surface structure, this study views those initially introduced by nouns as nominal clauses even if they include verbs in their structure. It is the initial word that determines a clause to be nominal or verbal. In other

words, nominal clauses are not only confined to those with N+N structures, which are known as equational or verbless clauses, but they also include different patterns of structures, such as S + VCl (S is a nominal or a noun group and the verbal clause is the embedded Predicate) or S + NCl (S is a nominal or noun group while the nominal clause is the embedded Predicate). Furthermore, the essential element of the NCl, known as خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement), was labeled Predicate (P) and Complement (C) to distinguish it from the Complement(s) (traditionally called Objects) that come as a predicted Participant Role of a Process (Main verb). Notably, both Predicate and Complement were used interchangeably throughout this study while discussing nominal clauses. Fawcett used the Symbol (<) to mean 'is expounded by', but it is used here to indicate (or/is realized as).

5.5 Data Description

For the data to be presented clearly to enable the reader to understand the syntactic issues addressed, each instance extracted from the data selected was shown in four lines. The first line in **bold** represents the Arabic version; the second line in *italics* represents the transliterated version (vocalization) of the extracted example; the third line is the literal translation with the interlinear glossing according to Leipzig Glossing Conventions found at http://www.eva.mpg.de/lingua/resources/glossing-rules.php; the last line is the English translation of the Arabic example.

In addition, when an extracted example contained a long phrase made of several items (words), dots (.....) were used to indicate that some items were purposely left out. The reason is that the internal structure of the groups that constitute the elements of the clause is not the focus of the current study. Another reason is that the syntactic description of long phrases or clauses might be difficult to be represented for space considerations related to the tree diagram generated by the software program. For the same reason, the

phrases and clauses that provided supplementary information as they were written between two commas, brackets, or dashes were left out as well. Finally, it is important to mention that elements that represented punctuation, such as S (Starter) or E (Ender), were not taken into consideration in the tree diagram of the simple clause.

5.5.1 Transliteration

Transliteration plays a crucial process in representing the collected data and making it accessible to readers. Therefore, the Romanization standard of the American Library Association (ALA) (2012), Library of Congress (LC), available online and downloaded from https://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpso/roman.html, was adopted for the conversion of data from the original Arabic scripts to the Romanized Arabic. However, some minor points must be highlighted to prevent any confusion that might be resulted. Such changes are stated here.

- 1) The definite article -الله (al-) (the), which is always prefixed to the nouns to indicate definiteness, is written in the same way whether it is pronounced الله (al-lām al-qamariyyah) (the moon article) or assimilated to the consonant attached to it for phonological reasons, i.e., الله الشمسية (al-lām al-shamsiyyah) (the sun article). For example, الشمس (al- shams) (the sun) is written with al- rather than ashshams even though al- is assimilated to the following consonant —sh ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012).
- 2) Second, الهمزة (al-hamzah) (ع) is not transliterated if it occurs initially or after the definite article -الارض (al-) (the), as in الأعناء (you) and الأرض al-ard (the earth). Still, it is transliterated as (')when it occurs in a medial or final position, as in القرآن (al-Qur'ān) (the Quran) and مبتدأ (mubtada') (Topic/Subject) ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012).

- 3) The consonant (h) is transliterated as —h when occurring in a final position if its case ending is not important, such as in الحياة (al-ḥayāh) (the life), but it is realized as —at to show the element cases in general, including the possessive structure: and المضاف (al-muḍāf) (the possessed) and المضاف اليه (al-muḍāf ilayhi) (the possessor), such as المضاف اليه (ḥaya-tu al-rajuli) (the man life).
- 4) علامات الإعراب ('alāmātu al-i'rāb) (The inflectional marks/case endings), the vowel sounds that appear at the end of words, are transliterated and separated from the words by a hyphen to highlight the case endings of linguistic elements, such as (al-ḥayāt-u) (the life). Tables 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5 demonstrate the vocalized system used for transliteration.
- 5) Inseparable particles, prepositions, conjunctions, and personal and possessive pronouns are separated from the words by a hyphen, such as الله (bi-hi) (with it), المناف (anna-hu) (that he).

Table 5.2: Arabic consonants ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012)

۶	Ļ	ت	ث	₹	٦	Ċ	د	ذ	J	j	س	ش	ص
												sh	
ض	<u>ظ</u>	ط	ع	غ	ف	ق	ای	ل	م	ن	A	و	ي
d	Ż	ţ	ć	gh	f	q	k	1	m	n	h	W	у

Table 5.3: Arabic vowels ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012)

	Ò	Ó
a	i	u

Table 5.4: Arabic long vowels ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012)

1	ي	و
ā	ī	ū

Table 5.5: Arabic diphthongs ("ALA-LC Romanization Tables," 2012).



5.5.2 Translation

One important and challenging task in describing a language is converting the sourcelanguage words, grammar, and syntax into another language. Translation of the Arabic instances into English was done by the researcher herself with the help of software and written dictionaries because she is a native-Arabic speaker and an English teacher. Since the focus is on highlighting how the syntactic properties are matched with the semantic ones of Transitivity, translation was maintained to be as literal as long as it did not contradict good English. In other words, once the translation of a particular instance did not reflect the grammatical issue concerned, the researcher preferred to maintain literal translation as long as it was consistent with well-formed English. Moreover, the contexts in which the instances occurred were considered to translate pronouns and interpret the In case of ambiguous expressions that could have different ambiguous words. interpretations (meanings), the researcher consulted a Professor in Arabic, who is a native-Arabic speaker. The native-Arabic professor is Prof Abdul Malek Al-Husami, who has been working as an Arabic syntactician for about 30 years. He is one of the most famous syntacticians in the Arabic language. The professor's role was to help analyze the syntax of the clause elements and decide which interpretation was more appropriate.

5.5.3 Tree Diagram

Neale (2002, pp. 135-136) states that "the tree diagram is a method of analyzing syntagmatic relations in a way that is most insightful as the first stage of an analysis, as it is useful for showing the level of complexity of a stretch of language." In other words, the linear representation of a clause does not show a full analysis, especially when the unit of the clause is filled by another element that is also filled by another unit. Fawcett (2012b, p. 22) emphasizes that the tree diagram is an effective method by which the syntax and the semantics of a clause are clearly and simultaneously shown.

As a result, the tree diagram that has always been known as a useful tool for the syntactic description of a language in Generative Grammar is utilized in the CG to demonstrate the functional syntax of clause structure. When the semantic and syntactic analysis of a clause is done, the tree diagram serves as the final representation that brings both analyses together through the relationship of conflation, symbolized by the forward-slash (/). The software program has been recently developed by the Department of Computer Science, Maynooth University, Ireland. It is an online software program, http://jkeatingsrv.cs.nuim.ie:8098/, which the researcher could use after watching some tutorial videos. Then, the department provided a username and password to enable the researcher to access the website and conduct the analysis.

5.6 Data Analysis

As stated in Chapters 1 and 3, meaning is prioritized over form in SFL since form is seen as the realization of meaning. Thus, this is a two-fold study since it, on the one hand, investigates the syntactic features of the simple clause in MSA; on the other hand, it matches these syntactic features with the semantic features of Transitivity. The semantic features of the clause elements serve as the base upon which the syntactic functions are simultaneously specified. The concepts of Processes and Participant Roles are semantic

because they are generated from the semantic system network of Transitivity. In contrast, the concepts of Subject, Main verb, and Complement represent the syntactic features of the clause elements (Fawcett, 2012b). As a result, the data analysis comprises two stages: the syntactic analysis stage and the semantic analysis stage. However, both stages of analysis were conducted almost at the same time since they are interdependent, and either of which leads to the other. Additionally, data analysis was done by the researcher herself in hand before they were transferred to the tree diagram software program.

5.6.1 Syntactic Analysis of Data

The syntactic analysis of nominal clauses started with identifying the essential elements of each nominal clause: (mubtad') (Subject) and خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement). These clauses were classified and analyzed further according to the type of their Predicates/Complements, whether they are single items, phrasal Complements, or clausal Complements (a nominal clause or a verbal clause). Bearing in mind that reversibility is a common phenomenon that occurs in nominal clauses, the same steps are followed to analyze reversibility in reversed nominal verbless clauses.

On the other hand, the syntactic analysis of verbal clauses was done by determining the elements of the Main verb (M) and Main verb Extension. In the CG, recognizing the Main verb in a clause is the proper start of the functional syntactic analysis because it is the key element to identify the number of inherent PRs and the number of clauses in the sentence (Wei, 2014, p. 46). Once the Main verb was determined at the level of form, the other syntactic elements were then recognized and functionally labeled, such as Subject (S), Complement(s) (C), Adjuncts (A), Auxiliary verb (X), Auxiliary verb Extension (XEx), Negator (N), etc. Accordingly, Tucker (2005) asserts that "each functional element must correspond to a grammatical unit". To do the functional syntax of the selected verbal clauses, some strategies proposed by the CG were followed:

1) Identifying the Main verb (M) (the Process) and its Participant Roles. To do so, Fawcett (2008, pp. 211-212) offers a test that he claims to be 99% reliable.

"Assuming that **xxx** stands for the Main verb, (**yy**) stands for one (or occasionally more) possible Main verb Extensions, (**zz**) stands for a possible preposition, and that each of **someone**, **something**, and **somewhere** stands for each possible PR, try saying:

"In this Process of xxx-ing (yy) (zz), we expect to find someone or something xxx-ing (yy) (zz) (someone or something) ((to or from) someone or something or somewhere)" Fawcett (2008, pp. 211-212).

- 2) Identifying every embedded clause and the element that shows how this embedded clause relates to the unit above it. When the Main verb is determined, it would be easy to decide whether this clause has any embedded clauses that fill specific element positions or has another co-ordinated clause linked by a Linker.
- 3) Identifying the highest clause in a sentence.
- 4) Starting the detailed analysis, which involves recognizing the clause elements mentioned in Chapter 3 like S, M, C, A, etc., Fawcett (2008, p. 209).

5.6.2 Semantic Analysis of Data

The semantic analysis was simultaneously done with the syntactic analysis. Concerning nominal clauses and reversed nominal clauses, once the essential elements of a nominal clause were syntactically identified and functionally labeled, the semantic analysis in terms of Transitivity was undertaken. The semantic analysis was achieved by identifying the PRs and their types by applying the re-expression tests (see Appendix A).

Concerning the semantic analysis of verbal clauses, once the Main verb was syntactically identified, the types of the PRs were then determined by applying the reexpression tests. (Fawcett, 2011a, p. 14); Fawcett (forthcoming c, p. 18) proposes that in doing an accurate semantic analysis of a clause, it is better to identify the Participant Roles expected by the Processes. There are cases where PRs are covert (unrealized in words), so it is necessary to build up a strong sense of the various types of Processes and the PRs associated with them (Fawcett, 2012b, p. 7). If one PR is not overtly realized and the analyst fails to identify it, the analysis would be incorrect because the Process might be mistakenly analyzed as a two-Participant Role Process rather than a three-Participant Role Process or as a one-Participant Role Process rather than a two-Participant Role Process. As a result, square brackets () were used to indicate that this element was not structurally realized but was semantically identified in the underlying clause structure. The researcher followed some of the steps proposed by Fawcett (forthcoming c, pp. 29-30) for analyzing Transitivity.

- 1- Considering the meaning of the Main verb and the Main verb Extension, if existing, and trying to find out how many PRs the Process of the clause predicts (the covert PRs).
- 2- Checking the configurations of PRs, see Chapter 3, to hypothesize the type of Process the clause is.
- 3- Applying the re-expression tests (see Appendix A) to determine the types of PRs first and the Process type second.
- 4- Returning to the second and third steps when one or more re-expression tests fail.

5.7 Research Analytical Stages

The current research has two areas of concern: the syntactic features of the simple nominal and verbal clause and the semantic features of the simple nominal and verbal clause. Therefore, to address these areas of concern, systemic steps were followed.

5.7.1 Coding

Data collection and coding are considered steps that preceded the data analysis. Having collected the data, the researcher coded the editorials as (Edit 1, Edit 2, Edit 3, Edi 4, and Edit 5). Similarly, the articles were also coded (Arti 1, Arti 2, Arti 3, Arti 4, and Arti 5). The countries were alphabetically organized, and the numbers of editorials and articles were given according to the selected countries they belong to, as shown in Table 5.1. For instance, Edit 1 and Arti 1 belong to the first country in Table 5.1, Bahrain, whereas Edit 2 and Arti 2 belong to the second country in Table 5.1, which is Egypt, etc.

5.7.2 Content Classification

Considering that MSA has two types of clauses, which are both under investigation, the content had to be reviewed and classified in each article and editorial before doing the analysis. The first classification was done to identify the clause type, so it was based on recognizing the word class of the initial word in each simple clause. If the clause was initially introduced by a noun, it was counted as a nominal clause; if it was initially introduced by a verb, it was considered a verbal clause. So, all the simple nominal clauses were gathered alone, and so were the simple verbal clauses. Meanwhile, the reversed nominal clauses with a Predicate-Subject Structure were sorted and put together to answer the second research question. Next, the nominal clauses were further categorized according to their Complement/Predicate structure into three types: a single item Predicate, phrasal Predicate, and clausal Predicate. As a result, the complex clauses were excluded from the analysis since they were beyond the scope of the current study. On the contrary, the verbal clauses were classified into five categories according to the number of PRs predicted by the Processes in MSA: zero-role Processes, one-role Processes, two-role Processes, three-role Processes, and four-role Processes.

5.7.3 Analyzing and Labeling

In this stage, the actual data analysis took place. Labeling was done not only at the level of elements but also at the level of clauses. It was applied from the start of the study to the end. At the level of elements, no analysis could be accurately done without giving functional labels to the elements of each described clause. For example, when the elements of PRs were initially recognized, they were first functionally labeled as S and C. After doing the syntactic analysis, they were then semantically labeled the semantic roles, for example Ca and At. At the level of clauses, each clause, whether nominal or verbal, was labeled to refer it back to the text from which it was extracted. For example, if the clause was a nominal clause existing in Article 3, it was labeled (NCI: Arti 3); if the clause was verbal occurring in Editorial 2, it was labeled (VCI: Edit 2). Reversibility in NCIs was analyzed and labeled in this stage too to answer the second research question. The labeling stage was very significant because it helped trace the clauses to their original texts and identify the context in which each clause occurred, (see Appendix B).

5.7.4 Final Functional Representation

This is the final stage undertaken after the processes of data analysis and description. Having done the manual syntactic and semantic analysis of the clauses extracted, the researcher utilized the software program to match both analyses. The researcher transferred both analyses to the tree form soft program to generate a tree diagram for each example. This diagrammatic representation showed the functional syntax of each extracted example, wherein the syntactic and semantic properties were matched and integrated into one single structure. Figure 5.1 below summarizes the stages followed to carry out the current study.

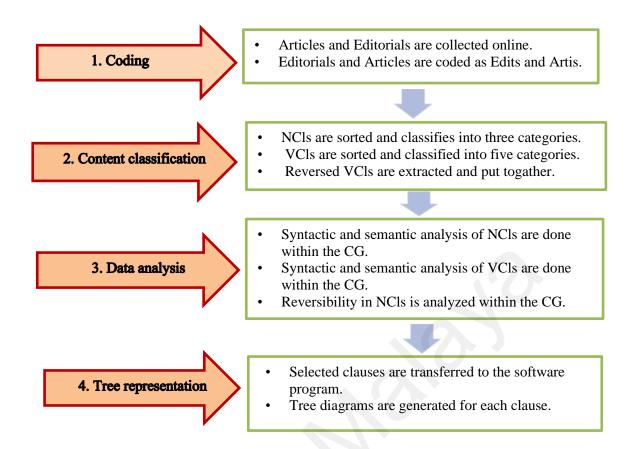


Figure 5.1: The stages followed to conduct the study

5.8 Conclusion

This chapter has set out the research methodology employed to carry out the current study. It has first pointed out the overall research design. It has also explained data collection, the type of the selected data, the source from which the data were gathered, and the homogeneous criteria used to obtain the wanted data. Then the chapter has brought to light the methods used to describe the data. The remainder of this chapter has discussed the stages followed to analyze the data so that as accurate results as possible would be obtained.

The coming chapter presents answers to the first and second research questions concerning the syntactic and semantic features of the simple nominal clause and how reversibility is manifested in simple nominal verbless clauses in MSA.

CHAPTER 6: SYNTACTIC AND SEMANTIC PROPERTIES OF THE SIMPLE NOMINAL CLAUSE WITHIN THE CARDIFF GRAMMAR

6.1 Introduction

This chapter answers the first and second research questions concerned with the syntactic and semantic features of the simple nominal clause in MSA. Based on the structural constructions of the Complement, the chapter first starts with the classification of nominal clauses into three main sub-types: a) nominal clauses with a single-item Complement, b) nominal clauses with a phrasal Complement, and c) nominal clauses with a clausal Complement. Section 6.2.1 introduces the syntactic and semantic features of nominal clauses whose Complement is a single item; Section 6.2.2 is devoted to describing simple nominal clauses whose Complement is phrasal, while Section 6.2.3 offers the syntactic and semantic aspects of simple nominal clauses with a clausal Complement. Sections 6.3 is devoted to presenting how reversibility is syntactically and semantically manifested in nominal verbless clauses within the CG. Finally, the chapter concludes with the functional description of the separation pronoun as a pronoun whose insertion is linked with the reversibility phenomenon in nominal verbless clauses.

6.2 Classification of the Simple Nominal Clause Based on the Structure of the Complement.

As mentioned in Chapter 4, the simple nominal clause is that clause that starts with a noun known as أصناء (mubtada') (Topic/Subject), which is placed initially to be informed about. This Subject needs another element that serves as an informant to tell something about that Subject. This element is known as (khabar) (Predicate/Complement). Unlike English, NCls could result from the juxtaposition of two nominals with no copula linking them. They are also called equational or verbless clauses by some linguistics (e.g. Abu-Mansour, 1986; Alazzawie, 2016; Bakir, 1979; Benmamoun, 2000; Eid, 1983; Fassi Fehri, 1993; Shlonsky, 1997). The Subject is usually definite, while the Predicate is

indefinite. Definiteness in Arabic is arranged in a hierarchical order from the most definite to the least definite (Marogy, 2010). Therefore, definiteness entails seven cases (Abu-Mansour, 1986, p. 196): الضمائر (al-ḍamā'ir) (pronouns), اسماء العلم (asmā'u al-ʻalam) (proper nouns), اسماء العلم (asmā'u al-ishārah) (demonstrative pronoun), المنادى (al-asmā' al-mawṣūlah) (relative pronouns), ال (al-) (the definite article), المناف (al-munādā) (vocatives), and possessive construction, which is made of two elements (al-munādā) (had-munādā) (la-munādā) (had-munādā) (had-munā

The structure of the Predicate in nominal clauses plays a vital role in shaping and determining the underlying structure of the whole clause. It, therefore, could be filled by a single item, a group, or a clause. Specifically, single Complements can include items, such as pronouns, adjectives, and nominalized verbs that are derived from verbs, such as each of item al-fā'i)l (active participle) and اسم الفقول (ismu al-fā'i)l (passive participle). Besides, Complements could be phrasal: noun groups, prepositional groups, quantity groups, and quality groups (adjectival and adverbial groups in the CG). They could also be clausal, filled by either a nominal clause or a verbal clause. As mentioned in Chapter 4, the symbol (<) is employed in the tree diagram to indicate that an element is of the same function, i.e., Predicate OR Complement. The researcher has avoided the symbol (/) because it might mistakenly mean the element is conflated with another semantic role, whereas Predicate and Complement are two terms reflecting the same syntactic function of an element. Besides, using the abbreviation P to refer to Complement in nominal clauses is important to distinguish it from the element that serves as the Object (Complement) of the Processes in verbal clauses.

6.2.1 Syntactic and Semantic Properties of Simple nominal Clauses with a Single-Item Complement

The first set of examples presents the syntactic and semantic features of the simple nominal clauses that have one single item as a Subject and another single item as a Complement. The Complement is called nominal because the word class of nouns in Arabic includes vast categories, namely pronouns, common nouns, proper nouns, numerals, adjectives, demonstratives, relative pronouns, and circumstantials. Let us consider examples (1) and (2) below.

الموت حق (1)

al-mawt-u haq-un the death-NOM truth-NOM

'Death is truth.' (NCl: Edit 3)

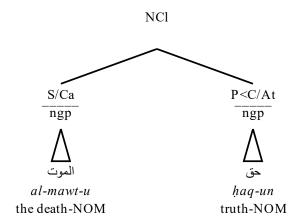
العبارات نفسها (2)

al- 'ibārāt-u nafs-u-hā

the phrases-NOM same-NOM-her.POSS

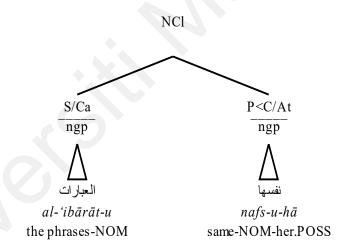
'Phrases are the same.' (NCl: Edit 3)

The two examples above share similar syntactic features because the first item is the Subject, and the second is the Complement juxtaposed without a copula. As it is the norm in MSA syntax, Subjects precede their Complements; Subjects are definite while Complements are indefinite. Figures 6.1 and 6.2 demonstrate the functional representation of these clauses, respectively.



Death is truth.

Figure 6.1: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by one item (ngp)



Phrases are the same.

Figure 6.2: Functional analysis of another NCl where the Complement is filled by one item (ngp)

As Figure 6.1 shows, the Subject is definite suffixed to the definite article -1 (al-) (the), (the) (the) (al-mawtu) (the death), while the Complement is filled by another single indefinite noun (haqun) (truth). In Figure 6.2, the Subject is also a definite item attached to the definite article al- (the), and the Complement is also one single less definite item filled by a ngp (nafsu-hā) (same-her), which is a possessive construction here. In terms of the experiential strand of meaning, both clauses express a 'relational attributive' meaning in that one participant is a member of a class or describes a quality that the participant has. That is, these clauses share similar semantic aspects in terms of experiential meaning since Subjects are conflated with the Carrier while Complements are conflated with the Attribute. Let us consider examples (3) and (4) of which Complements are a different word class.

الدنيا فانية (3)

al-duniyā fānīyat-un

the life-NOM impermanent-NOM

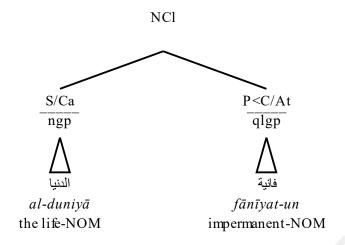
'Life is impermanent.'

(NCl: Arti 4)

الرسالة مكتوبة بشكل واضح (4)

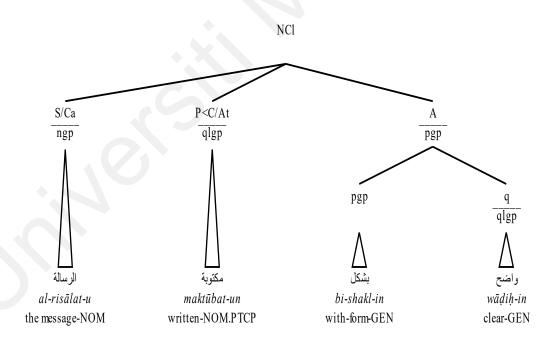
al-risālat-u maktūbat-un bi-shakl-in wāḍiḥ-in the message-NOM written-NOM.PTCP with-form-GEN clear-GEN

'The message is written in a clear way.' (NCl: Edit 3)



Life is impermanent

Figure 6.3: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a qlgp



The message is written in a clear way.

Figure 6.4: Functional analysis of another NCl where the Complement is filled by a qlgp (passive participle)

As Figures 6.3 and 6.4 illustrate, the Subjects in examples (3) and (4) are definite single items suffixed to the definite article الدنيا (al-) (the); namely الدنيا (al-duniyā) (the life) and (al-risālatu) (the message). The Complements are single items filled by adjectives, namely, فاتية (fānīyatun) (impermeant) in example (3) represented by Figure 6.3 and مكتوبة (maktūbatun) (written) in example (4) shown in Figure 6.4. The Complement in example (4) is a type of adjective (qlgps) that is called اسم المفعول (ismu al-maf'ūl) (passive participle). The Complement structure in Figure 6.4 is syntactically called nominal group or nominalization in SFL and semantically 'event thing' as it has an equivalent lexical verb (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 14). The Complement is then followed by an Adjunct of manner بشكل واضح (bi-shaklin wāḍiḥin) (clearly). Semantically, the clauses also express a 'relational attributive' meaning in which the Subject is conflated with the Carrier while the Complement is conflated with the Attribute.

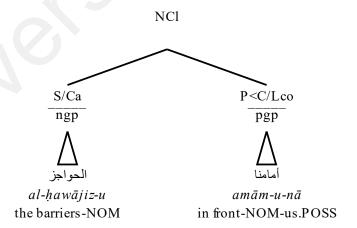
Therefore, it can be said that in MSA when the Predicate or Complement is syntactically one single item, as represented in the examples above, the experiential semantic feature of the Subject is the Carrier, while the experiential semantic property of the Complement is usually the Attribute. The study conforms to the finding of Bardi (2008) that considers nominal clauses that have no verbs in their structure as clauses expressing a 'relational' meaning. Following the SG, Bardi (2008) distinguishes between 'attributive' and 'identifying' in his semantic analysis of nominal relational clauses. Nevertheless, the CG argues that there is no need for such a distinction because the difference between them could be expressed in terms of thematization made by the speaker or writer (Fawcett, 2008, forthcoming c). It is the choice of the speaker to thematize a certain element by placing it in the initial position to achieve pragmatic reasons, which will be discussed in Section 6.3.

6.2.2 Syntactic and Semantic Properties of Simple Nominal Clauses with a Phrasal Complement

Complements in MSA can occur as a group/phrase. As a result, it is argued here that when the Complement is not a single nominal but a group, the clause might express other types of 'relational' meaning, such as 'locational', 'directional', and 'possessive'. Example (5) below shows a different type of nominal clause in which the Predicate is not a noun group, but a prepositional group that expresses a 'relational locational' meaning; example (6) is an illustrative instance of a nominal clause that expresses a 'relational directional' meaning.

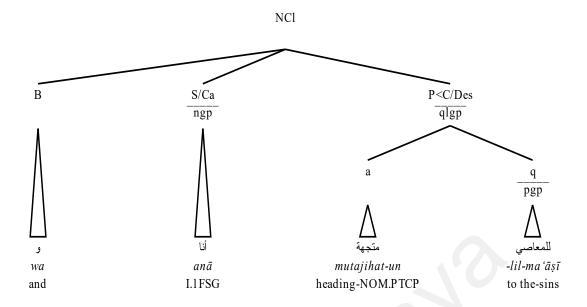
الحواجز أمامنا (5) الحواجز أمامنا (5) الحواجز أمامنا (7) al-ḥawājiz-u amām-u-nā the barriers-NOM in front-NOM-us.POSS 'Barriers are in front of us.' (NCl: Arti 4)

(6) وأنا متجهة للمعاصي..... wa anā mutajihat-un lil-ma'āṣī and I.1SG heading-NOM.PTCP to the-sins '.....while I am heading for sins.' (NCl: Arti 5)



Barriers are in front ofus.

Figure 6.5: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a pgp to express a 'relational locational' meaning



...while I amheading for sins.

Figure 6.6: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a qlgp to express a 'relational directional' meaning

Example (5), as shown in Figure 6.5, is syntactically made of only two items, the first of which is a noun functioning as the Subject, whereas the second element is a prepositional group that functions as the Complement. This prepositional group is made of the preposition $(am\bar{a}mu-)$ (in front of) that is attached to the possessive pronoun $(-n\bar{a})$ (us). Semantically, the Subject is conflated with the Carrier as the first Participant Role, and the Complement is conflated with the Location as the second Participant Role. On the other hand, the clause in example (6) represented by Figure 6.6 is a bound embedded clause functioning as a Circumstantial Role (Adjunct in terms of the functional syntax) of the matrix clause, which is intentionally omitted here for being long. It is presented here to demonstrate a nominal clause with a 'directional' meaning realized in its second Participant Role. In English, the directional meaning is typically expressed by a directional Process (Main verb) followed by a pgp that is analyzed as the Complement: $[S/Ca + M/Pro + C/Des \ or \ So \ or \ Pa]$. However, this type of nominal clause lacks a Process

in its underlying structure. So, the directional meaning is realized in the Complement itself, which is generally a nominalized verb (nominal event in SFL), known as المعاملة (ismu al-fā'il) (active participle). This Complement is a quality group, the active participle (ismu al-fā'il) (active participle). This Complement is a quality group, the active participle (mutajihatun) (heading), which is necessarily qualified by a pgp that is supposed to be the third clause element is a part of the Complement that expresses the directional meaning. The Subject which is the personal pronoun (anā) (I) is semantically conflated with the Carrier and the Predicate is conflated with the Destination. The difference between the passive participle (written) conflated with the Attribute in example (4) and the active participle conflated with the Destination in example (6) is that the latter involves movement in its meaning which requires a pgp as a qualifier to complete its purpose while the earlier does not need. For example, the pgp in example (6) might be mistakenly analyzed as an (Adjunct), which is not correct here. That is because the nominalized verb inherently predicts a prepositional phrase to express the directional meaning.

This could be applied to other nominalized verbs in the active participles that have directional meanings, such as ذاهب الى (dhāhibun ilā) (going to), سائر الى (sā'irun ilā) (walking to), عائد من (qādimun min) (coming from), عائد من ('ā'idun min) (coming back from), etc. Therefore, it could be argued that when active or passive participles occur as Complements, these nominalized Predicates express different Participant Roles. Consequently, the Complement in a clause that expresses a 'directional' meaning requires a pgp as a qualifier. Precisely, as Figure 6.6 shows, the second PR that represents the Destination is directly conflated with the Complement because of two reasons: a) the pgp is directly a qualifier of the Complement and b) the preposition can be substituted by other prepositions. Fawcett (forthcoming c, p. 34) makes it clear that the second PR in 'directional' processes is to be conflated with the completive (the noun occurs after the

preposition in pgp) when "the preposition in a prepositional group is fully determined by a choice that is located outside the meaning of the preposition itself." Therefore, the preposition in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominalized verb can be replaced by <math>independent in the pgp that qualifies the nominali

Furthermore, phrasal Complements can occur as noun groups that are modified by other qualifying elements, called noun group complex in SFG. Adjectives and possessive pronouns are considered post-nominal qualifiers in MSA syntax since they do not precede their head nouns but rather follow them. Adjectives agree with the nouns they post-modify in number, gender, case, and definiteness. On the other hand, nouns can be pre-modified by some modifiers to form noun groups. Besides the pre-modifier of التعريف (al-) (the definite article), there are other pre-modifiers, such as التعريف (asmā'u al-ishārah) (the demonstrative pronouns), أداة النداء (adātu al-nidā') (vocative particles yā or ayyuhā O), quantifying determiners such as نصف (ha'd) (some) or بعض (niṣf) (half), بعض (jamī') (all), numerical determiners, نفس (nafs) (same), the noun أو (ayy) (which), and superlative determiner (Abu-Mansour, 1986, p. 111). Let us consider the syntactic and semantic features of examples (7), (8), and (9) below.

نحن شعب عبقری (7)

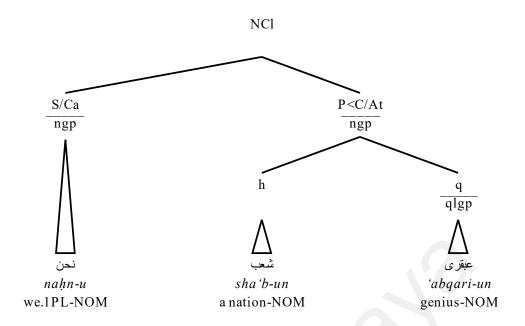
naḥn-u sha'b-un 'abqari-un.....
we.1PL-NOM a nation-NOM genius-NOM
'We are a genius nation....' (NCl: Arti 2)

الاختلاف سنة الحياة (8)

al-ikhtilāf-usunat-ual-ḥayāt-ithe difference-NOMa way-NOMthe life-GEN'Difference is the way of life.'(NCl: Arti 3)

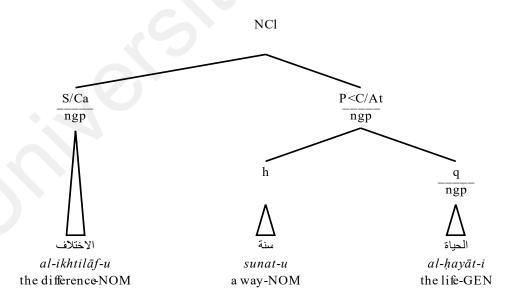
الصبر قوتُنا اليومي (9)

al-ṣabr-uqūt-u-nāal-yyawmī-uthe patience-NOMfood-NOM-our.POSSthe daily-NOM'Patience is our daily food.'(NCl: Arti 4)



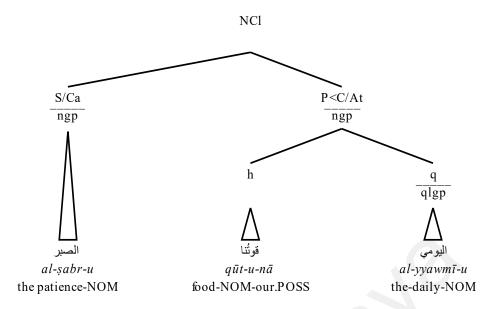
We are a genius nation.....

Figure 6.7: Functional analysis of a NCl where the phrasal Complement is an indefinite ngp qualified by an indefinite qlgp



Difference is the way of life.

Figure 6.8: Functional analysis of a NCl where the phrasal Complement is an indefinite noun qualified by a definite noun.



Patience is our daily food.

Figure 6.9: Functional analysis of a NCl where the phrasal Complement is a definite noun qualified by a definite adjective.

Figure 6.7 is illustrative of example (7), which is composed of two elements. The first element is the Subject which is filled by a personal pronoun نعن (naḥnu) (we). The second element is a phrasal Complement filled by a noun group qualified by an adjective. Precisely, the Complement is the indefinite noun نعب (sha'bun) (a nation), so the post qualifier adjective عبقري ('abqariun) (genius) agrees with it in gender, case, definiteness, and number. The Subject is conflated with the semantic feature of the Carrier, while the Predicate realizes the semantic feature of the Attribute.

The phrasal Complement in examples (8) and (9), as illustrated in Figures 6.8 and 6.9 respectively, is also a noun group in the form of a possessive construction, i.e. المضاف (al-muḍāf) (the possessed) and المضاف (al-muḍāf ilayh) (the possessor). The possessive construction in MSA has two types (Holes, 2004, pp. 199-200). The first type is that construction in which an indefinite noun is annexed to a definite one, as in example (8).

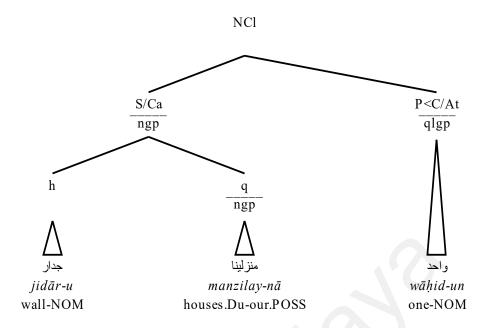
Specifically, the indefinite noun (sunatu) (a way) is annexed to the definite noun $(al-hay\bar{a}ti)$ (the life) to make it identifiable and definite. The second type is that an indefinite noun is made definite by being attached to a suffix pronominal, as the Complement in example (9). That is, the first element $(q\bar{u}tu-)$ (food) is made definite by being attached to the possessive morpheme $(-n\bar{a})$ (our) to make the definite Complement $(q\bar{u}tu-n\bar{a})$ (our food). The Complement is then post-qualified by the definite adjective $(al-yyawm\bar{u}u)$ (the daily) that agrees with it in case, number, definiteness, and gender. In terms of Transitivity meaning, both clauses express a 'relational attributive' meaning wherein the Subject is conflated with the Carrier while the Complement is conflated with the Attribute.

Likewise, Subjects can also occur in noun group complex that consists of other modifiers, such as possessive construction, prepositional group, quality group, etc.

جدار منزلينا واحد (10)

jidār-u manzilay-nā wāḥid-un wall-NOM houses.Du-our.POSS one-NOM

'The wall of our houses is one.' (NCl: Edit 3)



The wall of our houses is one.

Figure 6.10: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject is a ngp qualified by another noun.

Figure 6.10 shows the functional syntax of example (10), in which the Subject is made of two items that express possession. The Subject is made of the annexation of the possessed بغاله ($jid\bar{a}ru$) (wall) with the possessor منزلینا ($manzilay-n\bar{a}$) (our house) to which the possessive pronoun $(-n\bar{a})$ (our) is suffixed to form this noun group جدار منزلینا ($jid\bar{a}ru$ $manzilay-n\bar{a}$) (the wall of our house). Similarly, this clause realizes a 'relational attributive' meaning reflecting the Carrier and Attribute as their Participant roles. The complexity of noun groups increases when they are qualified by prepositional groups and modified by other pre-modifiers. Let us consider examples (11), (12), and (13) below.

كل ذلك من أجل الحصول على القليل من الاهتمام (11)

kul-u $dh\bar{a}lika$ min ajl-i al- $huṣ\bar{u}l$ -i ' $al\bar{a}$ al- $qal\bar{\iota}l$ -i all.NOM that from sake-GEN the getting-GEN on the little-GEN min al- $ihtim\bar{a}m$ -i

of the attention-GEN

'All that is for the sake of getting little attention.'

(NCl: Arti 3)

كل منا متفرد بطريقة أو بأخرى (12)

kul-un min-ā mutafarid-un bi-ṭarīqat-in aw bi-ukhrā each-NOM of-us unique-NOM in-a way-GEN or in-another 'Each of us is unique in a way or another.'

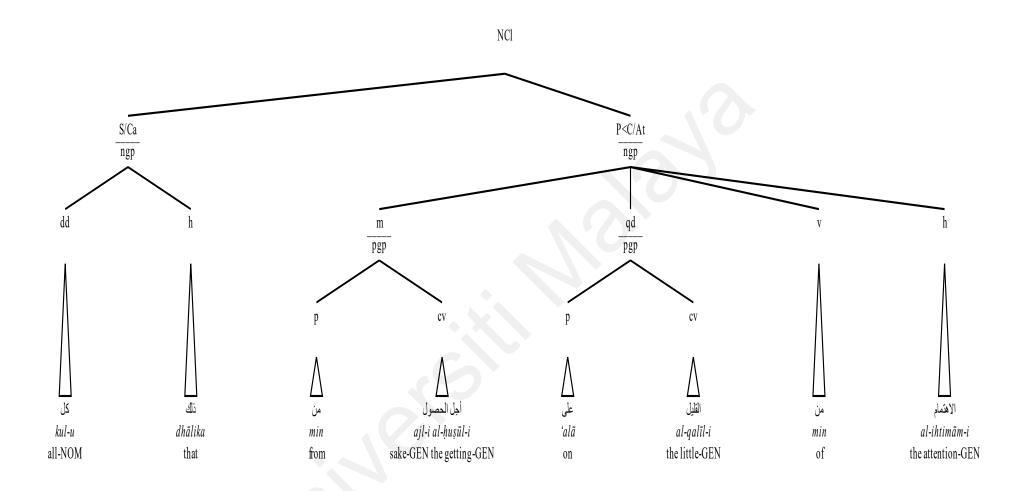
(NCl: Arti 2)

الاختلاف والتفرّد قيمتان عليوان لدى الشعوب المتقدمة (13)

al- $ikhtil\bar{a}f$ -uwaal-tafarud-u $q\bar{\imath}mat\bar{a}n$ -i' $l\bar{\imath}yw\bar{a}n$ -ithe difference-NOMand the uniqueness-NOMvalues.DU-GENhigh.DU-GEN $lad\bar{a}$ al-sh' $\bar{u}b$ -ial-mutaqadimat-iwiththe nations-GENthe developed-GEN

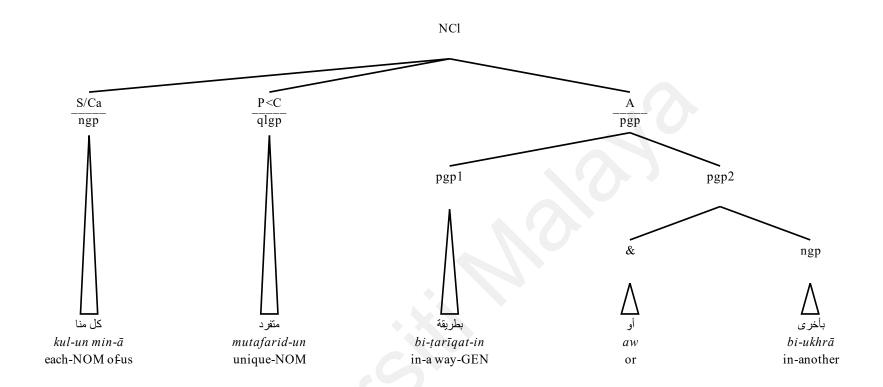
'Difference and uniqueness are great values for the developed nations.'

(NCl: Artic 3)



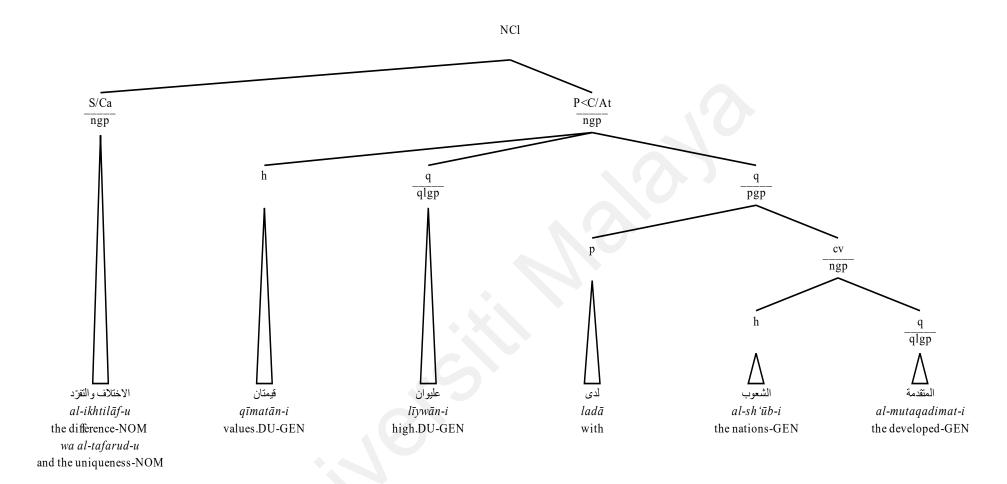
All that is for the sake ofgetting little of attention.

Figure 6.11: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a ngp modified by two pgps



Each ofus is unique in a way or another.

Figure 6.12: Functional analysis of a NCl with two co-ordinated pgps as an Adjunct



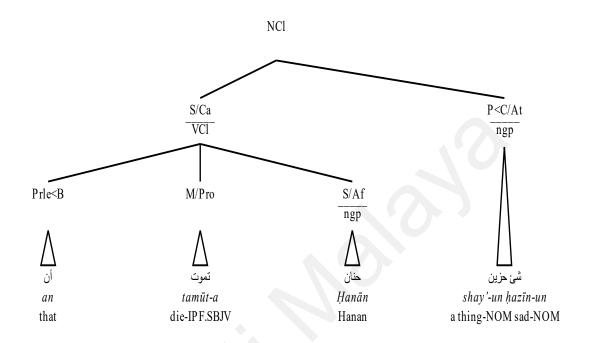
Difference and uniqueness are great values for the developed nations.

Figure 6.13: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is a ngp qualified by a qlgp and pgp

As demonstrated by Figures 6.11, 6.12, and 6.13, the Subjects are filled by noun groups: كل ذلك (kulu dhālika) (all that), فكل منا (kulun min-ā) (each of us), and الاختلاف (al-ikhtilāfu wa al-tafarudu) (the difference and uniqueness), respectively. The Complement in example (11) is also a complex ngp modified by two prepositional groups min ajli al-husūli 'alā al-galīli min al-ihtimāmi (for the من أجل الحصول على القليل من الاهتمام sake of getting little attention). In Figure 6.12, the Complement is a quality group (mutafaridun) (unique), and the two pgps co-ordinated by the linker 'or' are analyzed as an Adjunct because they can be posited clause-initially or clause-finally. The Complement in example (13), as shown in Figure 6.13, is a ngp قيمتان (qīmatāni) (two values) qualified by a quality group عليوان ('līywāni) (great) and pgp لدى الشعوب المتقدمة (ladā al-sh'ūbi al-mutaqadimati) (for the developed nations). Semantically, all these clauses express a 'relational attributive' meaning in which the Subject is in conflation with the Carrier, and the Complement is in conflation with the Attribute. No verb is included in the structures of these nominal clauses despite their long liner surface. Their complexity is achieved by the pgps, qlgps, or ngps added as qualifiers or modifiers of the Subject and Complement in nominal clauses.

Even though the functional analysis of the nominal clauses here is based on the syntactic structure of the Complement rather than the Subject, there is one structure related to the Subject that should be discussed here. This structure is when the unit that fills the Subject position is filled by a non-finite verbal clause made of [the accusative particle نُ (an) (that) + Main verb in the subjunctive mode + Subject]. This نُ (an) (that) and the verb could be construed as المصدرالموقل (al-maṣdar al-mu'wal) (the inferred gerund), which serves the function of the element whose position it occupies. Example (14) below explains this structure.

ان تموت حنان شئ حزين (14) an tamūt-a Ḥanān shay'-un ḥazīn-un that die-IPF.SBJV Hanan.SBJ a thing-NOM sad-NOM 'That Hanan has died is a sad thing.' (NCl: Edit 3)



That Hanan has died is a sad thing.

Figure 6.14: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject is filled by a VCl

As shown in Figure 6.14, the verbal clause أن تموت حنان (an tamūta Ḥanān) (That Hanan has died) is composed of three elements [Binder أن (an) (that) + Main verb تموت (tamūta) (has died) + Subject عنان (Hanan)]. It occurs clause-initially followed by a nominal group functioning as its Complement. The Complement is made of شئ (shay'un) (thing) as the head qualified by a qlgp خزين (ḥazīnun) (sad). This verbal clause functions as the Subject of the clause due to two reasons. First, it occupies the initial position of the nominal clause. Second, it can be replaced by المصدر الموول (al-maṣdar al-mu'wal) (the inferred gerund), which is the nominalized verb of the Main verb of the initial non-finite verbal clause [an + Main verb]. In other words, the inferred gerund

clause analyzed as the Subject. The use of المصدرالموؤل (al-maṣdar al-mu'wal) (the inferred gerund) is common in Arabic when it serves the functions of other elements, such as Complement or Adjunct. However, it is not very frequent when it functions as the Subject of nominal clauses because the typical unit the Subject is filled by is the ngp.

6.2.3 Syntactic and Semantic Properties of Simple Nominal Clauses with a Clausal Complement

Complements can also be clausal because they inform us about the Subjects in the syntactic unit of a clause. There must be a pronoun in the clausal Complement that refers anaphorically to the Subject (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996; Ibn Hishām, 1991). The clausal Complement can be either a nominal clausal Complement or a verbal clausal Complement.

6.2.3.1 Simple nominal clauses with a nominal clausal Complement

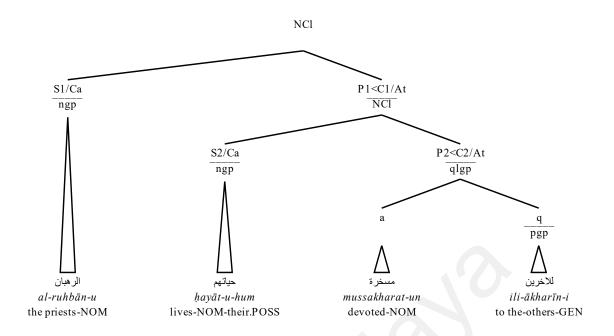
This sub-type of nominal clause is made of a nominal or noun group as a Subject and a nominal embedded clause as a Complement. It is neither a nominal nor a group that fills the position of the Predicate, but rather a nominal clause that also consists of a Subject and its Complement. Let us consider examples (15) and (16) below.

الرهبان حياتهم مسخرة للاخرين (15)

al-ruhbā-n ḥayāt-u-hum mussakharat-un ili-ākharīn-i the priests-NOM lives-NOM-their.POSS devoted-MON to the-others-GEN 'The priests, their lives are devoted to the others.' (NCl: Arti 4)

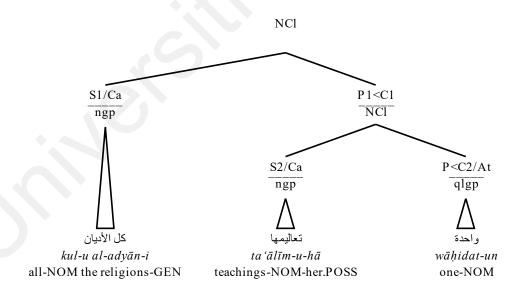
كل الأديان، تعاليمها واحدة (16)

kul-ual-adyān-ita ʿālīm-u-hāwāḥidat-unall-NOMthe religions-GENteachings-NOM-her.POSSone-NOM'All the religions, their teachings are one.'(NCl: Edit 1)



The priests, their lives are devoted to the others.

Figure 6.15: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Complement is filled by a nominal clause



All the religions, their teachings are one.

Figure 6.16: Functional analysis of another NCl with a nominal clausal Complement

Figure 6.15 demonstrates the functional syntax of example (15). The first element is syntactically analyzed as the Subject, which is a ngp الرهبان (al-ruhbānu) (the priests). The element that follows that subject is a second Subject made of the item حياتهم (hayātuhum) (their lives). The element coming after the second Subject is syntactically analyzed as its Complement, i.e., the second Subject's Complement. That Complement is a passive participle مسخرة (mussakharatun) (devoted), which is qualified by a pgp للاخرين (ili- $\bar{a}khar\bar{i}n$) (to the others) to describe the lives of the priests. The embedded nominal clause that consists of the second Subject حياتهم (hayātu-hum) (their lives) together with its Complement مسخرة للاخرين (mussakharatun ili-ākharīn) (devoted to the others) functions as the Complement of the first Subject الرهبان (al-ruhbānu) (the priests) of the matrix clause. Experientially, the first and second Subjects are conflated with the semantic role of the Carrier while the first and second Complements are conflated with the Attribute. Importantly, the possessive pronoun (hum) (their) that is suffixed to the second Subject refers anaphorically to the first Subject as a device that links the first Subject with its clausal Predicate (Abdul-Raof, 1998; al- Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Bardi, 2008; Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996).

Similarly, example (16) illustrated in Figure 6.16 shows another nominal clause that has an embedded nominal clause functioning as the Predicate of the first Subject. The Subject is a ngp made of the modifier (kulu) (all) and the head that is being modified $(al-ady\bar{a}ni)$ (the religions). That Subject is directly followed by a ngp $(ta'\bar{a}l\bar{t}mu-h\bar{a})$ (their teachings), which is functionally analyzed as the second Subject. The Complement of the second Subject is a qlgp $(w\bar{a}hidatun)$ (one). The embedded nominal clause made of the second Subject and its Complement functions as the first Subject's Complement. The first Subject is grammatically associated with its nominal clausal Predicate by the possessive resumptive pronoun $(-h\bar{a})$ (their) attached to the second Subject $(ta'\bar{a}l\bar{t}mu-h\bar{a})$ (their teachings). The choice to have two Subjects

that are related by a resumptive anaphoric pronoun is pragmatically motivated by the speaker or writer to achieve communicative purposes. In other words, the use of two subjects, such as الرهبان حياتها (al-ruhbānu ḥayātu-hum) (the priests their lives) in example (15), instead of one Subject as الرهبان (ḥayātu al-ruhbāni) (the lives of the priests), is meant to place some prominence on the first Subject as it was mentioned earlier in the preceding discourse. Therefore, it is marked as the clause 'Theme', whereas the Predicate is the 'New Information'. Experientially, the first and second Subjects are conflated with the Carrier, while the first and second Predicates are conflated with Attribute since all clauses express a 'relational attributive' meaning.

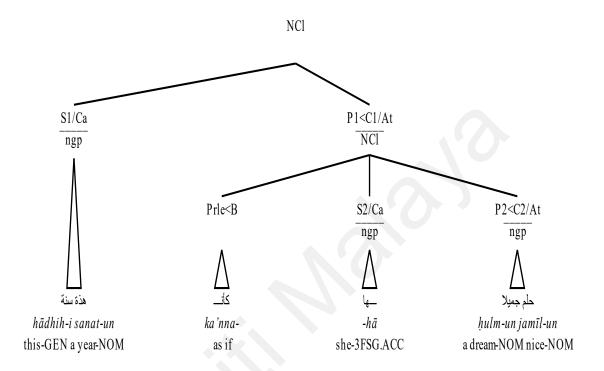
Another kind of nominal clausal Complement is that which starts with with living (inna wa akhawātu-hā) (inna and its sisters). In this type, the nominal clause begins with a Particle/Binder that belongs to ½! (inna) (indeed) and its sisters followed by the Subject of that Particle and then its Complement; these Particles assign the Subject the accusative case while their Complement is assigned the nominative case. The whole nominal clause that consists of the Particle + its Subject + its Complement functions as the clausal Complement of the initial Subject. Let us consider examples (17) and (18) to clarify this structure.

هذة سنة كأنها حلم جميلا (17)

hādhih-i sanat-un ka'nna-hā ḥulm-un jamīl-un this-GEN a year-NOM as if-she.3FSG.SBJ.ACC a dream-NOM nice-NOM 'This year is as if it were a nice dream.' (NCl: Edit 4)

 $[\]dot{\psi}(an)$ (that), discussed in Section 6.2.2, is a particle that governs verbs assigning it the subjunctive mode. On the other hand, $\dot{\psi}(anna)$ (that) and $\dot{\psi}(inna)$ (indeed), with double 'n', are particles of إِنَّ وَأَخُولَتُهَا (inna wa $akhaw\bar{a}tu-h\bar{a}$) that govern nouns. $\dot{\psi}(inna)$ (indeed) differs from $\dot{\psi}(anna)$ (that) in that the former is generally placed clause-initially while $\dot{\psi}(anna)$ (that) does not occur in the early position of the clause.

عزاؤنا أنك رحلتِ إلى مكان افضل (18) 'azā'-u-nā anna-ki raḥalt-i Condolences-NOM-our.POSS that-you.2FSG.SBJ went-PRF.2FSG ilā makānin afḍal to a place-GEN better 'Our condolences are that you went to a better place.' (NCl: Edit 4)



This year is as if it were a nice dream.

Figure 6.17: Functional analysis of a NCl with a nominal clausal Complement introduced by عَانَ (ka'nna) (as if)

Our condolences are that you went to a better place.

you.2FSG

that

Figure 6.18: Functional analysis of a NCl with a nominal clausal Complement introduced by أَنّ (anna) (that)

(you.2FSG)

This structure's syntactic and semantic characteristics are exactly like the previous sub-type in which any Particle does not introduce the Complement. To put it another way, there are two clauses: two Subjects and two Predicates. Example (17) demonstrates two clauses one of which is the matrix nominal clause, and the second is the embedded nominal clause کانها حلم جمیلا (ka'nna-hā ḥulmun jamīlun) (as if it were a nice dream). This clausal Complement consists of the Binder کانّ (ka'nna) (as-if) which is prefixed to its Subject الله (-hā) (she) and the Complement realized by the ngp ملم جميلا (ḥulmun jamīlun) (a nice dream). That is to say, the embedded nominal clause has a Subject and a هذة سنة Complement which altogether serve as the Complement of the first Subject الله (hādhihi sanatun) (this year). The pronoun الله (-hā) (she) attached to the Binder كأنّـ (ka'nna) (as-if) co-referentially refers to the Subject of the matrix clause هذة سنة (hādhihi *sanatun*) (this year). In terms of the experiential meaning, the Subjects in the matrix and embedded nominal clauses are conflated with the Carrier, and the Complements are conflated with the Attribute in clauses that express a 'relational attributive' meaning.

Likewise, example (18) demonstrates a little more complex structure in which there are one matrix clause and two embedded clauses. The Subject of the matrix clause is ('azā'u-nā) (our condolences) which is conflated with the Carrier. The Predicate is a nominal embedded clause that consists of [the Binder -نَّـن (anna)(that) + its name which is an attached pronoun (-ki) (you)+ its Complement]. The Complement of the Particle (raḥalti) (went) + the covert (canna) (that) is a verbal embedded clause made of رحلت (raḥalti) Subject انت (anti) (you) + إلى مكان افضل (ilā makānin afdal) (to a better place). This verbal embedded clause expresses a 'relational directional' meaning that predicts two PRs (Af-Ca + Pro + Destination). The Subject in this embedded clause is covert referring back to the second subject pronoun 'you' and conflated with the Affected-Carrier. As shown in Figure 6.18, the first embedded clause is a nominal clause occupying the position of the Complement of the matrix clause whose Subject is عزاؤنا ('azā'u-nā) (our condolences); the second embedded clause is a verbal clause filling the position of the Complement of the first embedded clause introduced by -نَّ (anna) (that). Arabic grammarians also considered إنّ (anna) (that)+its Subject + its Complement] as المصدر الموؤل (al-maşdar almu'wal) (the inferred gerund) that serves a certain function in the clause. Thus, the embedded nominal clause introduced by أنّ (anna) (that) can be construed as عزاؤنا رحيك الى مكان أفضل ('azā'u-nā raḥīluki ila makānin afdal) (our condolences are your leaving to a better place). It is worth mentioning that this sub-type of nominal clauses, in which an embedded nominal clause fills the Complement position, is less frequent than the type of nominal clauses in which an embedded verbal clause fills the Predicate, Section 6.2.3.2 below.

6.2.3.2 Simple nominal clauses with a verbal clausal Complement

Like the nominal clausal Complement, this sub-type of nominal clause is composed of a nominal or a ngp functioning as the Subject and an embedded verbal clausal Complement that consists of a Main verb and its subject, object, etc. Neither a nominal nor a group fills the position of the Predicate, but a verbal clause. The clause whose Complement is verbal is called a non-equational nominal clause (e.g. Abdel-Hafiz, 2005; Alduais, 2012; Anshen & Schreiber, 1968; Bakir, 1979). The linguists following the Chomskyan approach refer to this process as 'Topicalization' or 'Left-dislocation' in the sense that the clauses in the Arabic language are unmarked verbal-initial. Therefore, when a nominal element is moved from its post-verbal position to a pre-verbal position by a transformational rule, it is said to be 'Topicalized' or Left-dislocated. However, what is important here is not what this process is called or how it takes place. Instead, the focal issue is what type of clause it is. The current study views this clause as nominal and labels the pre-verbal noun as the Subject providing it is in the nominative case regardless of the process that causes such a movement.

Like the nominal clausal Complement, a resumptive anaphoric pronoun must occur in the embedded verbal clausal Complement to link it with its Subject (al- Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Bardi, 2008; Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996). It can be said that the main difference between this subtype and the previous sub-type of simple nominal clauses lies in the occurrence of a verb in its surface structure, which results in differences in terms of analysis. In other words, applying the CG to this sub-type of nominal clause is challenging due to the presence of a verb in the embedded clausal Complement. Examples (19) and (20) show the syntactic and semantic features of such a structure. The former has a positive clause functioning as its verbal clausal Complement while the latter has a negative verbal clausal Complement. Besides, the Main verbs or Processes in the embedded verbal clausal Complement in both examples predict two PRs: one Subject and one Complement.

قطر الفتية تواصل مسيرتها بثبات (19)

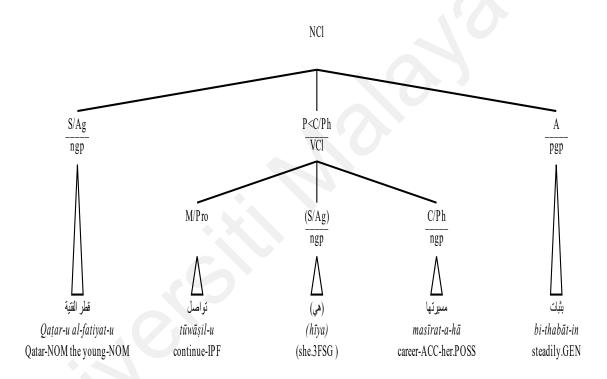
Qaṭar-ual-fatiyyat-utūwāṣil-umasīrat-a-hāQatar-NOMthe young-NOMcontinue-IPF.3FSGcareer-ACC-her.POSSbi-thabāt-insteadily-GEN

'Young Qatar continues its career steadily.'

(NCl: Edit 5)

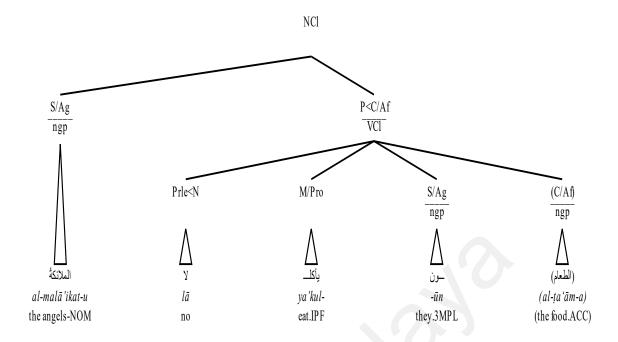
الملائكة لا يأكلون (20)

al-malā'ikat-ulāya'kulu-ūnthe angels-NOMnoteat.IPF-they.3MPL.SBJ'Angels do not eat.'(NCl: Arti 4)



Young Qatar continues its career steadily.

Figure 6.19: Functional analysis of a NCl with a positive verbal clausal Complement



Angels do not eat.

Figure 6.20: Functional analysis of a NCl with a negative verbal clausal Complement

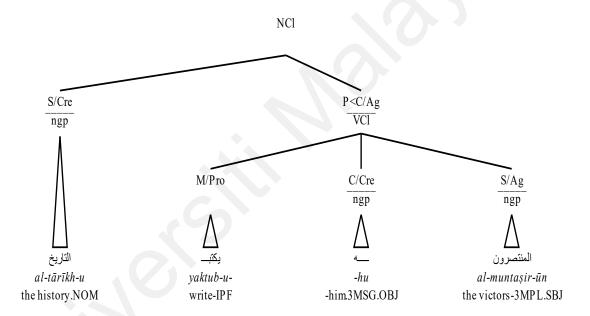
Pigure 6.19 describes example (19) where قطر الفتية (Qataru al-fatiyyatu) (young Qatar) is the Subject, whereas the Complement is filled by an embedded verbal clause (tūwāṣilu masīrata-hā bi-thabātin) (continue its career steadily). This embedded verbal clause is composed of (tūwāṣilu) (continue) Main Verb + هي (tūya) (she) the covert Subject + مسيرتها مسيرتها (masīrata-hā) (its career) Complement + بشبات (bi-thabātin) (steadily) Adjunct]. The Subject in the embedded clause is covertly realized by the prefix morpheme (ta-) that indicates third person feminine singular, and it refers anaphorically to the initial Subject معارفة (Qataru al-fatiyyatu) (young Qatar). In addition, the occurrence of the suffixed anaphoric possessive pronoun (-hā) (her) in the Complement of the embedded verbal clausal Predicate is necessary because it serves as a linking device that associates the initial Subject in the matrix clause with its verbal clausal Complement (Abdul-Raof, 1998).

The focal point to be pointed out is that the verbal clausal Complement exhibits different experiential meanings from the nominal clausal Complement. While the matrix clauses usually express a 'relational attributive' meaning when a nominal clause fills the embedded Complement, they here express different meanings that vary according to the Process that exists in the embedded verbal clause, filling the position of the Complement. The Process in the embedded verbal clause in example (19) is realized by the Main verb $(t\bar{u}w\bar{a}silu)$ (continue), which is an 'influential' Process whose the Subject is conflated with the Carrier, while the Complement is experientially conflated with the Phenomenon.

In the same vein, Figure 6.20 shows a simple nominal clause with an embedded verbal clause filling the position of the Complement. The Subject is a ngp realized by الملائكة (almalā'ikatu) (the angels) whereas the Predicate is filled by a negative verbal clause لا يأكلون $(l\bar{a}\ ya\ 'kul-\bar{u}n)$ (they do not eat). The verbal Complement is made of $[\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \]$ (no) Negator + عنك (va'kul-) (eat) Main verb + عن ($\bar{u}n$) (they) a suffixed Subject pronoun]. The attached Subject pronoun in the embedded verbal clause co-refers with the initial Subject (al-malā'ikatu) (the angels). Semantically, the initial Subject is conflated with the Agent as the first PR because the Main verb in the embedded verbal clause is the 'material action' Process یاکل (va'kul-) (eat), which inherently predicts two PRs. The Process 'eat' entails that someone is expected to eat something. While the first PR is the Agent conflated with the Subject, the second PR is the Affected conflated with the Complement. However, the Complement of the Process يأكل (ya'kul) (eat) in the embedded verbal clausal Predicate is not overtly realized. Therefore, this unrealized covert element, which is usually assumed as الطعام (al-ṭa'āma) (the food), should be functionally and semantically identified and labeled while doing the functional analysis by putting it between brackets, as illustrated by Figure 6.20. Apart from this, example (21) below shows the same structure but with different semantic roles associated with the nominal clause elements. The clause displays a different word order in that the element that is supposed to serve as the Complement occurs clause-initially preceding the Subject in the embedded verbal clause. However, the initial element is syntactically analyzed as the Subject of the matrix clause because it is in the nominative case. While the initial word is analyzed as the Subject, the semantic role associated with it is not Agent but Created.

التاريخ يكتبة المنتصرون (21)

al-tārīkh-uyaktub-u-hual-muntaṣir-ūnthe history-NOMwrite-IPF-him.3MSG.OBJthe victors-3MPL.SBJ'History is written by the victors.'(NCl: Edit2)



History is written by the victors.

Figure 6.21: Functional analysis of a NCl wherein the Subject is conflated with the Created

In example (21) represented by Figure 6.21, the initial Subject of the matrix clause is

realized by the ngp التاريخ (al-tārīkhu) (the history), and its Complement is filled by the

embedded verbal clausal Complement يكتبة المنتصرون (yaktubu-hu al-muntaṣirūn) (is

written by the victors). The verb يكتب (yaktubu-) (write) is a two-role Process expressing

a 'material action' meaning in which the Subject is conflated with the Agent, while the

Complement is conflated with the Created. The initial item التاريخ (al-tārīkhu) (the history)

functions as the Subject, but the semantic role associated with it is the Created because it

is the thing that is being written, and the verbal clausal Complement is conflated with the

Agent. This is also reflected in the embedded clause, which has the word order M+C+S.

The anaphoric pronoun attached to the Main verb (-uh) (him) refers back to the

Subject التاريخ (al-tārīkhu) (the history).

However, one recurring problem in analyzing the nominal clause with the embedded

verbal clausal Complement is the question of what semantic role is to conflate with the

embedded verbal clausal Complement if the Main verb in this embedded clause is a three-

role Process. Should it be conflated directly with the embedded verbal clausal

Predicate/Complement, like the case with the previous examples wherein the Main verb

is two-role Process, or with another element in the embedded verbal clause that fills the

Complement position? The answer is that it is better not to conflate the expected PR

directly with the Complement if the Process inherently predicts three PRs, i.e., two

Complements. This is also applied to the Processes that inherently predict only one PR

conflated with the Subject. Let us consider examples (22) and (23) below.

كلنا سنموت (22)

kul-u-nā sa-namūt-u

all-NOM-we.1PL will.FUT-die-PER.1PL

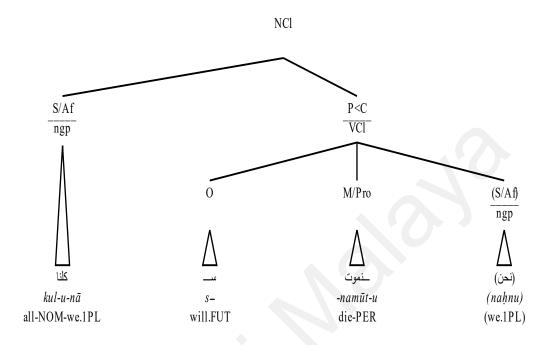
'All of us will die.'

(NCl: Arti 5)

145

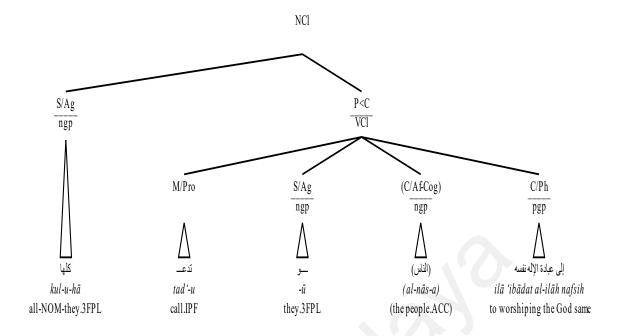
كلها تدعو إلى عبادة الإله نفسه (23)

kul-u- $h\bar{a}$ tad '- \bar{u} $il\bar{a}$ ' $ib\bar{a}dat$ -i al- $il\bar{a}h$ nafsih all-NOM-they.3FPL call.IPF-they.3FPL.SBJ to worshiping the God same 'All call for the worshiping of the same God.' (NCl: Edit 1)



All ofus will die

Figure 6.22: Functional analysis of a NCl with a verbal clausal Complement whose Main verb is a one-role Process



All call for the worshiping of the same God.

Figure 6.23: Functional analysis of a NCl with a verbal clausal Complement whose Main verb is a three-role Process

As Figure 6.22 shows, the nominal clause in example (22) starts with a ngp functioning as the Subject that is المنافعة (kulu-nā) (all of us). The Complement is filled by an embedded verbal clause made of سنفوت (sa-namūtu) (will-die-we). The Main Process of the embedded verbal Complement is نفوت (namūtu) (die), which inherently predicts one RP that is Affected. As a result, the Subject is conflated with the Affected while its verbal clausal Complement does not have another PR to be conflated with. On the other hand, the Process in the embedded verbal clausal Complement in example (23), illustrated in Figure 6.23, is realized by the Main verb عنافل (call-they for). This verb reflects a 'mental communicative' Process that inherently expects three Role Processes: (Agent + Affected-Cognizant + Phenomenon). However, the surface structure of the clause displays only two PRs, namely the Agent and Phenomenon. That is because the third PR (Af-Cog) is not overtly realized as the writer has chosen to make it covert. The second

covert Complement could be recovered from the context as الناس (al-nāsa) (the people). The writer has chosen to structurally unrealize it because it could be understood and obtained from the previous discourse. To avoid the confusion that results from deciding which PR should be chosen to be conflated with the Complement, i.e., the covert Affected-Cognizant or the overt Phenomenon, it is logically sufficient to leave the verbal clausal Complement without any semantic role associated with it.

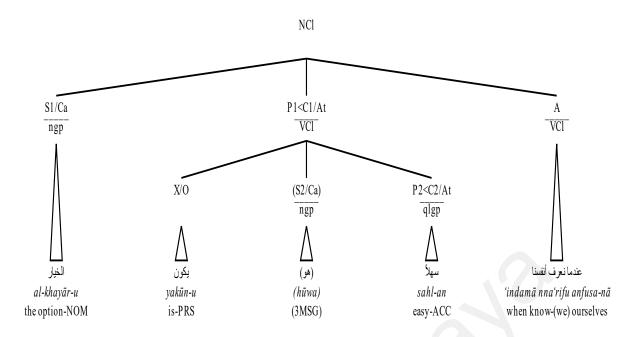
Furthermore, as mentioned earlier, nominal clauses allow some Particles, such as أَل (inna wa akhawātu-hā) (inna and its sisters), to precede their essential elements, discussed in Section 6.2.3.1; So do they allow certain Auxiliaries, called النواسخ (nawāsikh) (cancellers), to enter their construction. The verbal clausal Complement can be introduced by one type of Auxiliaries (Xs), which is known as المنافعة (kāna wa akhawātu-hā) (was and its sisters). These Xs enter the nominal clause assigning في (raf') (nominative case) to the first nominal calling it المنافعة (khabaru-ha) (its Predicate/Complement). Let us investigate examples (24) and (25) below.

الخيار يكون سهلاً عندما نعرف أنفسنا (24)

al-khayār-uyakūn-usahl-an'indamāna 'rif-uanfusa-nāthe option-NOMis-PRS.3MSGeasy-ACCwhenknow-IPF.1PLourselves'The option is easy when we know ourselves.'(NCl: Arti 2)

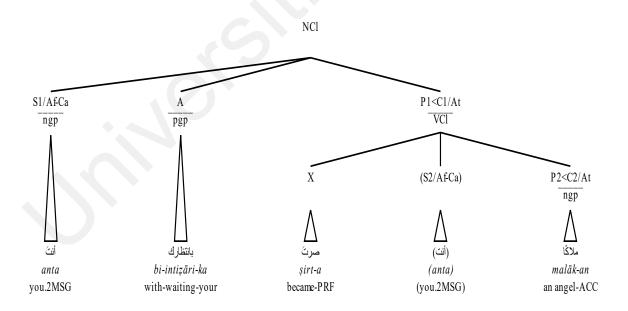
أنتَ بانتظارك صرتَ ملاكًا (25)

anta bi-intizāri-ka ṣirt-a malāk-an you.2MSG with-waiting-your became-PRF.2MSG an angel-ACC 'With your waiting, you became an angel.' (NCl: Arti 4)



The option is easy when we know ourselves.

Figure 6.24: Functional analysis of a NCl where the verbal clausal Complement is introduced by the Auxiliary verb يكون (yakūn) (is).



You with your waiting became an angel.

Figure 6.25: Functional analysis of a NCl where verbal clausal Complement is introduced by the Auxiliary verb (sirta) (became)

The Subjects in examples (24) and (25) above are ngps: الخيار (al-khayāru) (the option) and أنت (anta) (you), respectively. These Subjects are followed by Auxiliary verbs: the imperfective Auxiliary يكون (yakūnu) (is) in example (24) and the perfective Auxiliary (sirta) (became) in example (25). These Auxiliaries require a Subject and a Complement. The Subject of the Auxiliary verb يكون (yakūnu) (is) is covert assumed as (saḥlan) (easy). The سهلاً (hūwa) (he) and the Complement is realized by the qlgp سهلاً Subject of the Auxiliary صرت (sirta) (became) in example (25) Figure 6.25 is also covert assumed as أنت (anta) (you), while its Complement is realized by the ngp noun ملاكًا (malākan) (an angel). The embedded verbal clause made of [X+S2+C2] functions as the Complement of the first Subjects of the matrix clauses: الخيار (al-khayāru) (the option) and أنت (anta) (you). In terms of Transitivity meaning, the clauses express a 'relational attributive' meaning in which the Subject in example (24) is conflated with the Carrier, while the Subject in example (25) is conflated with the Affected-Carrier. The Complements in both examples are conflated with the Attribute. The existence of the anaphoric resumptive pronouns that co-refers with the initial Subjects is necessary to link them with their verbal clausal Predicates. In example (25), the co-referentiality occurs in the covert Subject (hūwa) (he) inferred from the verbal inflectional pattern: the morpheme — (ya-) prefixed to the Auxiliary verb يكون (ya-kūnu) (is-he). It refers anaphorically to the Subject الخيار (al-khayāru) (the option), denoting third person masculine singular. In example (25), the anaphoric pronoun is realized by the suffixed morpheme — (-ta) suffixed to the perfective Auxiliary عرت (ṣir-ta) (became-you). Thus, it co-refers with the initial Subject, which is the second person singular pronoun أنت (anta) (you).

In brief, nominal clauses usually tend to express a 'relational' meaning when the Complement occurs as a single item, a group, or a nominal clause. Yet, they express different Process meanings once a verbal clause fills the Complement. Whether the clause

that functions as the Predicate of the initial first Subject is filled by an embedded nominal clause or an embedded verbal clause, a resumptive anaphoric pronoun must occur in this embedded clause to co-refer with that Subject. The occurrence of the Complement of the Subject in the form of a clause does not influence its structural feature as a Complement of the Subject, but it affects the semantic role with which it is associated.

6.3 Reversibility in the Simple Nominal Verbless Clause

Reversibility is a common feature in simple nominal verbless clauses where Subjects and Complements are non-verbally predicated (Choueiri, 2016; Eid, 1991; Marogy, 2010; Mohammad, 2000). To answer the second research question concerned with reversibility in the simple nominal verbless clause, definiteness must be highlighted. As indicated earlier, definiteness has a significant role in determining the syntactic order of a nominal clause. The more definite an item is, the more probably it occurs as the Subject in the nominal clause; the less definite an item is, the more it tends to function as the Complement of that Subject. Additionally, it has been pointed out that definiteness is hierarchically ordered from the highest degree of definiteness, which is personal pronouns, to the lowest degree of definiteness, which is possessive constructions. Therefore, reversibility can be of two types based on the notion of definiteness: optional and obligatory (Marogy, 2010; Mohammad, 2000; Peled, 2009; Ryding, 2005). When both Subject and Complement have a different degree of definiteness, there is a possibility to reverse them on pragmatic grounds. But when the Subject lacks its inherent characteristic of being definite, then it syntactically becomes obligatory to post it clausefinally.

6.3.1 Optional Reversibility

When Subject and Predicate are both definite, the element that expresses a higher degree of definiteness is prioritized to be initially placed in the clause as the Subject.

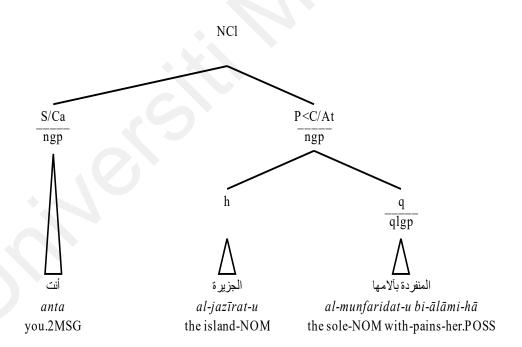
However, there is some common ground that when both elements are definite and referential to each other, the elements can be reversed, and the element occupying the initial position is assumed to be the Subject even if it is less definite (Bardi, 2008; Marogy, 2010; Owens, 1988; Peled, 2009). Let us consider examples (26) and (27).

أنت الجزيرة المنفردة بآلامها (26)

anta al-jazīrat-u al-munfaridat-u bi-ālāmi-hā
you.2MSG the island-NOM the sole-NOM with-pains-her.POSS
'You are the sole island with its pains.' (NCl: Edit 1)

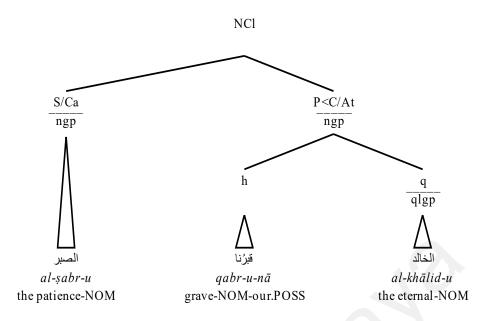
الصبر قبرُنا الخالد (27)

al-ṣabr-uqabr-u-nāal-khālid-uthe patience-NOMgrave-NOM-our.POSSthe eternal-NOM'Patience is our eternal grave.'(NCl: Arti 4)



You are the sole island with its pains.

Figure 6.26: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject and Complement have a different degree of definiteness



Patience is our eternal grave.

Figure 6.27: Functional analysis of a NCl where the Subject and Complement are both definite and referential

As Figure 6.26 demonstrates, the Subject and Complement are definite. The Subject, the personal pronoun (anta) (you), occurs in the initial clause position because it semantically bears the highest degree of definiteness. The presence of the definite article (al-) initially as a pre-modifier of the second element (al-jazīratu) (the island) motivates its occurrence as the Complement of the clause. Therefore, this is the unmarked order and the norm of the nominal clause in MSA. Similarly, in example (27) as illustrated in Figure 6.27, both Subject and Complement are differently definite. The Subject is more definite because it is suffixed to the definite article الصبر (al-ṣabru) (the patience), so it occurs clause-initially followed by the Complement which is less definite definite al-khālidu) (our eternal grave). In terms of Transitivity, the clauses express a 'relational attributive' meaning where the Subject is conflated with the carrier while the Complement is conflated with the Attributive.

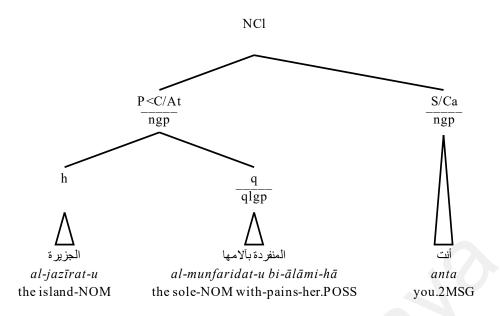
Nevertheless, the speaker might prefer to place the least definite word clause-initially for pragmatic reasons, i.e., thematizing it by placing it early in the clause. In this case, it is argued that the elements retain their syntactic and semantic functions despite their different positions. But they might not retain their semantic and syntactic properties if they are referential because it would be difficult to decide which element is the identity and which one is the quality. To clarify this point, let us consider examples (28) and (29) in which the elements in examples (26) and (27) are deliberately reversed. Even though in example (28) the less definite element is pre-posed, it is still analyzed as the Complement of the clause, and the more definite element in anta (you) still functions as the Subject even if it comes second. On the other hand, the elements in example (29) do not retain their syntactic and semantic properties after being reversed because they are referential, see Figures 6.28 and 6.29.

الجزيرة المنفردة بآلامها أنت (28)

al-jazīrat-ual-munfaridat-ubi-ālāmi-hāantathe island.NOMthe sole-NOMwith-pains-her.POSSyou.2MSG'The sole island with its pains is you.'

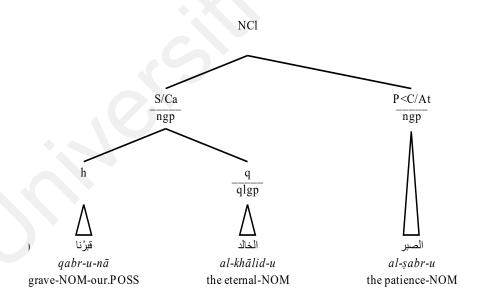
قبرُنا الخالد الصبر (29)

qabr-u-nā al-khālid-u al-ṣabr-u grave-NOM-our.POSS the eternal-NOM the patience-NOM 'Our eternal grave is patience.'



The sole island with its pains is you.

Figure 6.28: Functional analysis of example (26) when it is reserved



Our eternal grave is patience.

Figure 6.29: Functional analysis of example (27) when it is reversed

This reversal form of the nominal clause is optional because it is used to achieve pragmatically communicative purposes (Cantarino, 1974; Ryding, 2005). In example (26), the ngp أنت (anta) (you) is the Subject Theme, and the element functioning as the Complement, الجزيرة المنفردة بآلامها (al-jazīratu al-munfaridatu bi-ālāmi-hā) (the sole island with its pains), is marked as 'New Information'. The optional reversibility of these elements in example (28) causes the pre-posed Complement to be the Subject Theme, but it is marked as the 'Marked Participant Theme'. Although the personal pronoun is post-posed, it is still analyzed as the Subject of the clause that is semantically conflated with the Carrier. According to Cantarino (1974, p. 31), this type of inversion is made to give the Complement an emphatic effect. On the contrary, the reversed elements in example (29) retain neither their syntactic functions nor their semantic properties. This change in the clause word order involves a change in the syntactic and semantic features. Therefore, the initial word عَبْنَا الْحَالَة (qabru-nā al-khālidu) (our eternal grave) acts as the Subject conflated with the Carrier, whereas the second element (al-sabru) (the patience) represents the Complement conflated with the Attribute.

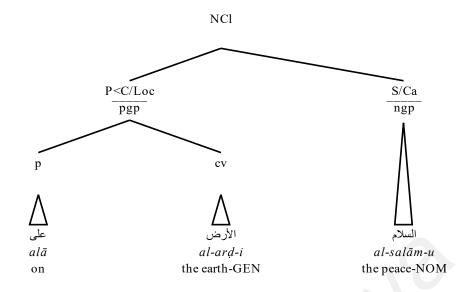
Another common case of optional reversibility wherein the reversed elements retain their syntactic and semantic functions occurs when the Subject is definite, and the Complement is filled by a pgp. Let us consider example (30) below.

على الأرض السلام (30)

 $al\bar{a}$ al-ard-i al- $sal\bar{a}m$ -u on the earth-GEN the peace-NOM

'On the earth is peace.'

(NCl: Edit 1)



On the earth is peace.

Figure 6.30: Functional analysis of a NCl where reversibility is optional

As Figure 6.30 shows, what occurs clause-initially is the pre-posed Complement represented by the pgp على الأرض (alā al-arḍi) (on the earth), which is indefinite, while the definite Subject (al-salāmu) (the peace) occurs finally. The pre-posed Complement is thematized, so it is marked as the 'Marked Participant Theme', while the Subject is marked as 'New information'. Even though the Subject and Complement elements are intentionally reversed, they retain their syntactic and semantic functions. Semantically, example (30) expresses a 'relational locational' meaning where the Subject is conflated with the Carrier while the Complement is conflated with the Location.

6.3.2 Obligatory Reversibility

Reversibility can also be obligatory. If the Subject is indefinite, this causes the clause to be ungrammatical. This is because traditional Arabic grammar does not admit the occurrence of indefinite Subjects in the clause-initial position. As a result, these indefinite Subjects are postposed and placed after the Predicates that are pre-posed. Let us consider

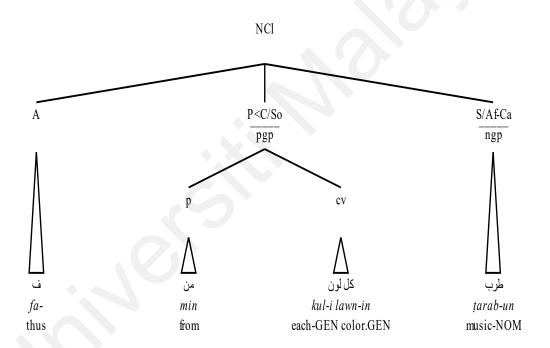
examples (31) and (32) which show obligatory reversibility of the nominal clause elements.

فمن كل لون طرب (31)

fa-min kul-i lawn-in ṭarab-un thus-from each-GEN color-GEN music-NOM 'Thus, some is from each type.' (NCl: Edit 4)

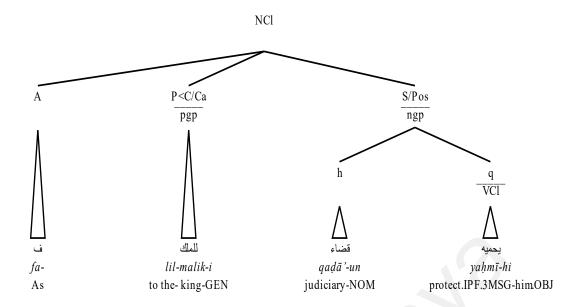
فللملك قضاء يحميه (32)

fa-lil-malik-i qaḍā'-un yaḥmī-hi thus-to the-king-GEN judiciary-NOM protect.IPF.3MSG.SBJ-him.OBJ 'Thus, the king has judiciary protecting him.' (NCl: Edit4)



Thus, some is from each type

Figure 6.31: Functional analysis of a NCl where reversibility is obligatory



As the king has judiciary protecting him.

Figure 6.32: Functional analysis of another NCl where reversibility is obligatory

Here in Figures 6.31 and 6.32, the Complements precede their Subjects because the Subjects are all indefinite ngps; namely, طرب (tarabun) (music) in example (31) and فضاء (qadā'un) (judiciary) in example (32), whereas the Complements are filled by pgps: من (min kuli lawnin) (from each color) and المالة (lil-maliki) (to-the king), respectively. Accordingly, to achieve grammatically admissible nominal clauses, these Subjects are allowed to be moved away from the initial positions leaving these initial positions to their phrasal Complement to occupy; yet the Subjects and Complements retain their syntactic functions as [C + S]. This kind of inversion is not optional, as is the case in examples (28) and (29), in which both elements are definite with different degrees of definiteness. It is rather an obligatory inversion needed to construct a well-formed nominal clause. However, the study argues that obligatory reversibility is not only constrained by syntactical reasons but is also motivated by pragmatic factors. To put it differently, the study also attributes Subject-Complement reversibility to pragmatic reasons because in

examining the contexts in which these clauses appear, it is found out that the pre-posed Complements have been explicitly or implicitly referred to in the previous discourse, while the postposed Subjects reflect the 'New Information'. Therefore, mentioning the pre-posed Complements in the previous discourse makes them 'Given Information', and the Subjects are placed clause-finally to be marked as 'New Information'.

In terms of the semantic features of the experiential system network, the elements also retain the Participant Roles associated with them even if they occur in their unusual positions. The postposed Subject in example (31) is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, while its pre-posed Complement is conflated with the Source as it metaphorically expresses a 'directional locational' meaning. The clause in example (32) reflects a 'relational possessive' sense that is expressed through the pgp (fa-lil-maliki) (as-to the-king). Thus, the Subject in example (qaḍā'un) (judiciary) is semantically conflated with the Possessed, and the Complement is conflated with the Carrier.

Retaining the syntactic and semantic functions of the essential nominal clause elements, whether in the optional or obligatory reversibility, leads to conform what Fawcett has proposed in the unnecessity of the distinction made between 'identifying' and 'attributive' clauses. Additionally, even though Bardi (2008) distinguished between 'identifying' and 'attributive' clauses in his analysis, he stated that both identifying and attributive clauses could be reversible in Arabic. He added that reversibility occurs more frequently in attributive clauses than in identifying clauses due to the syntactic characteristics of the elements in both clauses. Therefore, the current study confirms Fawcett's claim in dispensing the distinction between 'identifying' and 'attributive' clauses on the ground that reversibility occurs in both types, and the elements still retain their syntactic and semantic functions. Non-linguistic pragmatic factors have an essential role in inverting the Subject-Complement structure into a Complement-Subject structure.

Moreover, while the differences in the choices made by the speaker or writer to thematize one element other than the other stems from pragmatic choices constrained by the context in case of the optional reverse type, it is argued that thematization of the Complements in the obligatory case results from both syntactic and pragmatic constraints. The indefinite subjects are reversed in terms of the syntactic constraints that prevent them from occurring clause-initially. In terms of pragmatic constraints, the pre-posed Complements reflect 'Given information' shared between the writer and the reader while the postposed Subject represents the unknown knowledge. Peled (2009) proposes a third type of clause structure with non-verbal Predicate (e.g., prepositional group) + (infinite Subject) to account for the occurrence of such a structure, shown in examples (31) and (32). Nevertheless, it is argued that this clause type is redundant because it is a nominal clause with reversed elements that retain their syntactic functions as well as semantic features.

(*Pamīr al-Faṣl*) (Separation Pronoun) ضمير الفصل

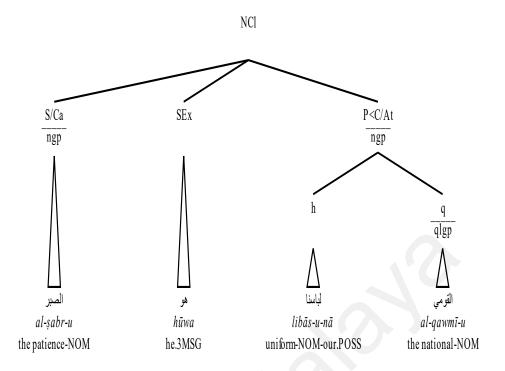
When discussing reversibility and definiteness, a nominative pronoun is sometimes used to separate the Subject from its Predicate in nominal verbless clauses when these two elements are equally definite. The occurrence of this pronoun is confined to nominal verbless clauses only. This pronoun is called ضميرالفصل (damīr al-faṣ)l (separation pronoun) or ضميرالعماد (damīr al-'imād) (base pronoun). The Subject in nominal clauses is typically definite, but the Predicate is not. As mentioned earlier, when the Complement is definite but with a less degree of definiteness than the subject, the Subject and Complement can be reversed, see examples (26), (27), (28), and (29). However, when they are equally definite, the occurrence of this pronoun in nominal clauses between the Subject and Complement is obligatory, allowing the definite noun introduced initially to be analyzed as the Subject. In other words, the speaker or writer has the freedom to determine the order of these elements and select either element as the Subject since they

have an equal degree of definiteness. Modern linguistics usually call this pronoun 'pronominal copula' as it links the Subject with its Complement (Al-Horais, 2006; Alazzawie, 2016; Aoun et al., 2010; Bardi, 2008; Benmamoun, 2008; Choueiri, 2016; Edwards, 2006; Eid, 1983; Fassi Fehri, 1993; Ouhalla, 1999, 2013). Yet, the study disagrees with such a point of view as the function of this pronoun is viewed as 'separating' rather than 'linking'.

According to the Arabic syntax, ضيرالفصل (damīr al-fas)l (separation pronoun) has some characteristics: a) it must be a pronoun, b) it must be preceded by a definite noun, c) it must co-refer with the first nominal that is the Subject, d) it must be in the nominative case, e) it must agree with the Subject in number, gender and case, and f) it should serve an emphatic function (Ibn Yaʿīsh, n.d., pp. 109-111). Therefore, when the Subject and Complement are definite, this third-person pronoun is inserted between them to emphasize and exclude what is being told about the Subject and to resolve the ambiguity that might be made in identifying the Subject's qualifiers from the Predicate (Eid, 1983). These qualifiers are بنا (sifah) (adjective) and بنا (badal) (apposition), a qualifying element that is used post-nominally to replace the preceding noun. However, the insertion of this pronoun could be optional and obligatory. Let us first explain the optional insertion of this pronoun by considering example (33) below.

الصبر هو لباسنا القومي (33)

al-ṣabr-u hūwa libās-u-nā al-qawmī-u the patience-NOM he.3MSG uniform-NOM-our.POSS the national-NOM 'Patience is our national uniform.' (NCl: Arti 4)



Patience is our national uniform.

Figure 6.33: Functional analysis of a NCl where ضميرالفصل (ḍamīr al-faṣl) (separation pronoun) is optional

As illustrated in Figure 6.33, the clause consists of an initial ngp الصبر (al-ṣabru) (the patience) functioning as the Subject and a second ngp as the Complement لباسنا القومي (libāsu-nā al-qawmiu) (our national uniform). The Subject is definite as it is prefixed by the definite article الله (al-) (the), and the Complement is less definite because it is juxtaposed with another item to construct the possessive structure. In this case, the separation pronoun هو (hūwa) (he) is optionally added to convey an emphatic meaning that excludes the attribute to the Subject only. Even if the elements in this example are reversed as الما القومي هوالصبر (libāsu-nā al-qawmiu hūwa al-ṣabru) (our eternal grave is patience), the initial ngp, الباسنا القومي (libāsu-nā al-qawmiu) (our national uniform), is analyzed as the Subject followed by its Complement الصبر (al-ṣabru) (the patience). That is because the existence of the separation pronoun assigns the first element as the

Subject/Carrier and the second as the Predicate/Attribute. Accordingly, if that pronoun is deleted from the surface structure of the clause, the clause is still grammatically and semantically well-formed, but the emphatic meaning conveyed by this pronoun will not exist.

On the contrary, the addition of the separation pronoun might not be optional but rather obligatory because it helps to distinguish the Complement from other qualifiers as عفة (ṣifah) (adjective) and بدل (badal) (apposition). Let us consider examples (34) and (35) where ضمير الفصل (damīr al-faṣ)l (separation pronoun) is obligatory.

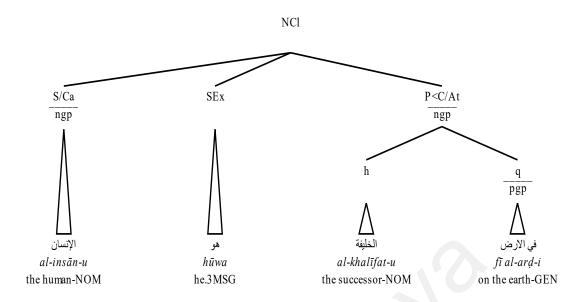
الإنسان هوالخليفة في الارض (34)

al-insān-u hūwa al-khalīfat-u fī al-arḍ-i the human-NOM he.3MSG the successor-NOM in the earth-GEN 'Man is the successor on the earth.' (NCl: Edit 1)

الإيمان هو المفتاح لإطلاق قوانا الروحية (35)

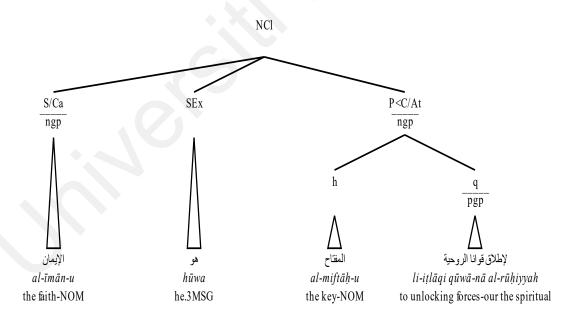
al-īmān-u hūwa al-miftāḥ-u li-iṭlāqi qūwā-nā al-rūḥiyyah the faith-NOM he.3MSG the key-NOM to unlocking forces-our the spiritual 'Faith is the key to the unlocking of our spiritual forces.'

(NCl: Edit 1)



Man is the successor on the earth.

Figure 6.34: Functional analysis of a NCl where ضمير الفصل (ḍamīr al-faṣl) (separation pronoun) is obligatory



Faith is the key to the unlocking of our spiritual forces.

Figure 6.35: Functional analysis of another NCl where ضمير الفصل (ḍamīr al-faṣl) (separation) is obligatory

As shown in Figures 6.34 and 6.35, both Subjects and Predicates are equally definite ngps attached to the definite article -الله (al-) (the). The separation pronoun (hūwa) (he) is inserted to separate the Subjects from their Complements: (al-insānu) (the human) from الإنسان (al-khalīfatu) (the successor) in example (34) and الخليفة (al-mānu) (the faith) from الخليفة (al-miftāḥu) (the key) in example (35). If this pronoun does not exist, the Complements are mistakenly analyzed as بدل (badal) (apposition). So, the reader will be expecting other elements to complete the meaning of the clause. Experientially, the Subjects are conflated with the Carrier while the Predicates with the Attribute.

In terms of the functional analysis of such a pronoun, there are two accounts for analyzing this pronoun in traditional Arabic syntax. The first account considers the separation pronoun as a redundant pronoun whose semantic function is emphatic only. The second account analyzes it as a second Subject that functions together with its following Complement as an embedded nominal clausal Complement of the first Subject. In the analysis of ضمير الفصل (damīr al-faṣ)l (separation pronoun), Bardi (2008, pp. 3-344) called the structure in which it occurs in nominal clauses 'tripartite' as it consists of [a nominal group (S) + a pronominal (separation pronoun) + a nominal group (C)]. However, he only focused on its semantic property as a pronoun to place more exclusiveness on a certain characteristic of the Subject (Token in his analysis). In his representation, he labeled it (z), which does not reflect its either semantic or syntactic function. In dealing with such redundant elements in the CG, Tucker (2005) analyzes the elements occurring initially and finally as CEx (Complement Extension); so does the study view this pronoun as an Extension of the Subject. Considering the traditional accounts above, the current study proposes that both accounts are not compatible as they do not reflect the function of this pronoun as it should be. Analyzing this pronoun as a second Subject is thought to be problematic because it first has the same referent as the first Subject. Second, the insertion of this pronoun is sometimes optional in that it can be deleted without causing the ungrammaticality of the clause. This contradicts the view that makes it a second Subject as the Subject is an essential element in nominal clauses. Third, as explained in examples (34) and (35), this pronoun's syntactic and semantic function to differentiate between Predicates and other nominative elements makes its insertion obligatory and essential, a fact that casts doubt on considering it an extra element that has no curtail function.

Drawing upon the aforementioned discussion, the CG framework could solve this by analyzing this pronoun as an Extension of the Subject (SEx). This functional analysis allows the optional and obligatory insertion of this pronoun without causing any problematic complications that affect the structural and semantic soundness of the clause. Emphasis and disambiguation are only expressed through the insertion of this pronoun which co-refers with the Subject and separates it from its Complement. In other words, there is no need to analyze the separation pronoun as either a second Subject or as an extra pronoun as long as this pronominal primarily contributes to the meaning of the Subject as an emphatic device, and it simultaneously co-refers with that subject and agrees with it in case, number and gender.

6.5 Conclusion

By utilizing the CG for analysis, this chapter has focused on presenting answers to the first two research questions concerning the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple nominal clause and the manifestation of reversibility in MSA. To analyze the syntactic features of the simple nominal clause and match them with their semantic properties of Transitivity, the study has based the analysis on the classification of the Complement into a single item, phrasal, and clausal. The analysis has found that when the Complement of the simple nominal clause is a single item, such as an adjective, a noun, or a pronoun, the clause expresses a 'relational attributive' meaning, where the

Subject is experientially conflated with the Carrier, and the Complement is conflated with the Attribute. Nevertheless, the nominal clause expresses other sub-types of 'relational' meanings when the Complement is phrasal, such as 'locational', 'directional', 'possessive, etc. Besides, it has also been argued that when the nominal clause expresses a 'directional meaning, the Participant Role is directly conflated with that phrasal Complement, which is qualified by a prepositional phrase. The presence of that prepositional group is necessary to indicate the nature of the second PR, i.e., whether the Complement is conflated with the semantic roles of Designation, Source, or Path.

The chapter then explains the syntactic and semantic features of the nominal clauses whose Complement is filled by a clause. It first highlights the Complement that is filled by a nominal clause. In this sub-type of nominal clauses, there are two Subjects and two Complements. The structure made of the second Subject and its Complement serves as the Complement of the first Subject in the matrix clause. In terms of the experiential strand of meaning, clauses often express a 'relational' meaning wherein both Subjects are conflated with the Carrier, whilst both Complements are conflated with the Attribute. Additionally, there must be a resumptive pronoun in the embedded nominal clause to link the first Subject with its embedded nominal clausal Complement. Then the chapter has discussed the second sub-type of nominal clauses wherein an embedded verbal clause fills the Complement slot. The results have shown that when the Complement is a verbal embedded clause, the clause expresses other different meanings, such as 'material', 'influential', 'mental', etc. The second semantic Participant Role has been proposed to be directly conflated with the whole embedded verbal clausal Complement when the Main verb in the embedded verbal clause is a two-role Process. On the other hand, the results have indicated that when the Main verb existing in the embedded verbal clausal Complement is a thee-role Process, the semantic role doesn't need to be directly conflated with the Complement. That is because when the verb is a three-role Process, confusion might arise concerning which PR is selected to conflate it with the Complement. Besides, there is no semantic role associated with the Complement if the Process in the embedded verbal clausal Complement is a one-role Process.

Following this discussion, the second research question concerned with the phenomenon of reversibility in simple nominal verbless clauses has been explained. The results obtained have revealed that in some optional and obligatory reversibility cases, the clause elements retain their syntactic and semantic features despite being placed in their unusual positions. Additionally, the decision to pre-pose or postpose an element is pragmatic in the optional reversibility, while it is attributed to both syntactic and pragmatic motivations in the obligatory reversibility. Such findings conform to Fawcett's proposal to abandon the distinction between 'identifying' and 'attributive' clauses. Finally, the chapter has ended with the functional analysis of ضمير الفصل (damīr al-faṣl) (the separation pronoun), arguing against the two traditional accounts that analyze it as a second Subject or a redundant pronoun. Instead, this pronoun has been interpreted as an Extension of the Subject (SEx) based on two reasons. First, the separation pronoun has the same referent as the first Subject, which casts doubt on the traditional analysis that views it as a second Subject in the embedded nominal clause. Second, the insertion of this pronoun could be optional or obligatory, which refutes the other account that views it as a redundant pronoun with no essential function.

Following this chapter, Chapter 7 is interested in offering answers to the last research question, which deals with identifying the syntactic properties of the simple verbal clause in MSA and matching them with the semantic aspects of the experiential meaning of Transitivity.

CHAPTER 7: SYNTACTIC AND SEMANTIC PROPERTIES OF THE SIMPLE VERBAL CLAUSE WITHIN THE CARDIFF GRAMMAR

7.1 Introduction

This chapter offers answers to the third research question dealing with the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple verbal clause in MSA with reference to the Cardiff Grammar model. It first highlights the most common features of the simple verbal clause in MSA. Then it provides the base on which the Arabic simple verbal clause is classified in the current study to conduct its functional analysis. Based on the number of the PRs predicted by the Process, the study classifies the simple verbal clause into five categories: zero-role Processes, one-role Processes, two-role Processes, three-role Processes, and four-role Processes. Each category of clause is analyzed and discussed separately in an independent section and supported by the diagrammatic trees to show the functional analysis of the selected examples.

7.2 Classification of the Simple Verbal Clause Based on the Number of the Process's PRs

The simple verbal clause is defined as that clause that starts with \dot{b} (fi 'l) (verb), Process in terms of the semantic system network of Transitivity. The unmarked order of the simple verbal clause in MSA is VSO. Among the main distinctive differences between the English clause structure and the Arabic clause structure is that Subjects in MSA follow their verbs. The verb is the only non-movable element in the Arabic clause in that the other elements could move around it by being placed pre-verbally or post-verbally (Abu-Mansour, 1986). The Subject is called \dot{b} (\dot{a} 'il) (Agent/Subject), and it is assigned the nominative case by the verb. Any verb must have a Subject, and a clause can never be considered grammatically correct if it has no Subject. The Subject appears overtly after verbs if it is only a bound morpheme suffixed to the verb or an independent nominal. Suppose the Subject is not realized in the surface structure of the verbal clause. In that

case, the Subject must be assumed in its underlying structure, which is reflected by the morphological inflectional patterns of the verbs. These morphological verb inflections reflect not only the Subject but also its gender, person, and number.

The verb also governs مفعول به (maf'ūlun bihi) (Object), the Complement in the Cardiff Grammar, assigning it the accusative case. The Complement and the other types of Complements are considered optional or non-essential on the basis that this verbal clause can be grammatically well-formed even if its Complements are absent in its surface structure. The number of Complements varies according to the type of Process expressed in the clause. If the clause Process predicts only one Participant Role, the clause does not include any Complement, and this PR is realized as the Subject. If the Process predicts more than one PR, these PRs include the Complements as well. To investigate the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple verbal clause in MSA, the clauses are classified according to the number of PRs predicted by the Process into five types: zerorole Processes, one-role Processes, two-role Processes, three-role Processes, and fourrole Processes. That is, the number of the PRs that Processes in MSA govern can be a maximum of four, the Subject plus three Complements (al-Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996; Owens, 1988). Classifying the simple verbal clause based on the predicted PRs number is motivated by the CG approach that focuses on what is inherently expected by the clause Process to identify its different elements. This classification is significant to carry out the analysis because it helps draw clear-cut criteria on the syntactic and semantic features associated with each category and how these Processes are distinguished from one another.

7.2.1 Zero-Role Processes

According to MSA, when the Main verb extends to affect another element, it is said to be (muta'ddi) (transitive). Alternatively, when the verb does not have an effect

to pass over another element, this verb is said to be \(\frac{1}{2} \) (\(l\bar{a}zim \)) (intransitive) (Peled, 2009). Thus, the traditional definition of \((ta'addi) \) (Transitivity) in MSA is nearly equivalent to that in English grammar. However, in the CG, Fawcett has made it clear that a verb that is treated as intransitive, i.e., only one expected Participant Role that is conflated with the Subject, could be transitive if it inherently predicts another element in a certain context. In other words, it is possible to construe what might be traditionally analyzed as a Circumstantial Role (Adjunct) as a Participant Role (Complement) based on the context in which the Process occurs within the CG perceptive, and vice versa.

In English, 'environmental' Processes are the only type that has no predicted PR. There are two structures here: a) a Process only or b) a Process + Process Extension. As a result, a clause as 'It is sunny' is syntactically realized as S + M + MEx in the sense that the Subject is empty because it has no referent. Fawcett considered it illogical to conflate 'sunny' with the Attribute if its Subject is not conflated with Carrier as it is empty. However, a clause as 'The weather is sunny' is analyzed as a 'relational attributive' Process, functionally as S/Ca + M + C/Att.

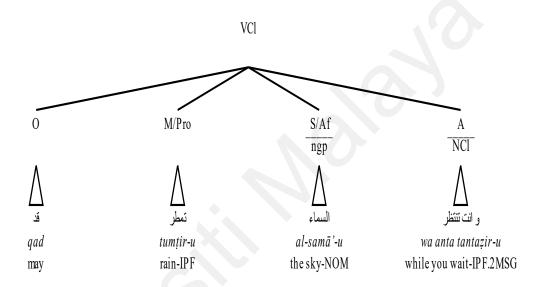
MSA consists of Processes that express 'environmental' meanings, such as المسلقة (tumţiru) (rain), تعلي (tuthliju) (snow), تعلي (tar'idu) (thunder), المسلقة (tahubu) (blow), etc. Yet, these Processes are not construed as zero-role because they are proposed to predict at least one PR. Cantarino (1974) and Bardi (2008) asserted that the natural phenomenon itself is syntactically analyzed as the Subject. Semantically speaking, the study's findings are in line with those of Bardi (2008) and Cantarino (1974) in that these clauses express two types of 'material action' meanings: happening and doing. The first type of happening indicates that the natural phenomenon just happens and does not have any other PR to influence. Examples (1) and (2) below demonstrate this type of 'environmental' Process.

قد تمطر السماء و انت تنتظر (1)

qad tumṭir-u al-samā'-u wa anta tantaẓir-u may rain-IPF the sky-NOM while you wait-IPF.2MSG 'It may rain while you are waiting.' (VCl: Arti 4)

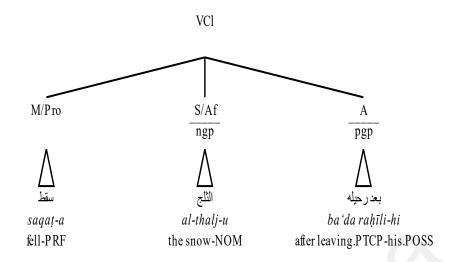
سقط الثلج بعد رحيله (2)

saqaṭ-a al-thalj-u baʻda raḥīli-hi fell-PRF the snow-NOM after leaving.PTCP-his.POSS.GEN 'The snow fell after his leaving/death. (VCl: Edit 2)



It may rain while you are waiting.

Figure 7.1: Functional analysis of an 'environmental' Process with Affected as the only PR



The snow fell after his leaving/death.

Figure 7.2: Functional analysis of another 'environmental' one-role Process that expresses happening

As shown in Figures 7.1 and 7.2, examples (1) and (2) include one-role Processes represented by the Main verbs تعطر (tumţiru) (rain) and (saqaṭa) (fell). In these 'material action' clauses, the Subject in example (1) is المساء (al-samā'u) (the sky), and it is (al-thalju) (the snow) in example (2). They are both conflated with the Affected as what causes the natural phenomena to happen is not mentioned. The particle (qad) (has) is analyzed as an Operator that achieves the probability of the event as it occurs with the imperfect verb. Still, when used with the perfective verb, it indicates the completion of the event in the past (Ryding, 2005).

The second type of 'environmental' Process is that which involves doing. The 'environmental' Processes express the 'material action' of doing because the natural force is filling the Participant Role of Agent. After all, it causes a visible physical change and affects another Participant Role. There is a change in the state of the surroundings caused by the natural force or phenomenon. Let us see examples (3) and (4) below.

انتظرْ فيما تدير الريح طواحين الخواء (3)

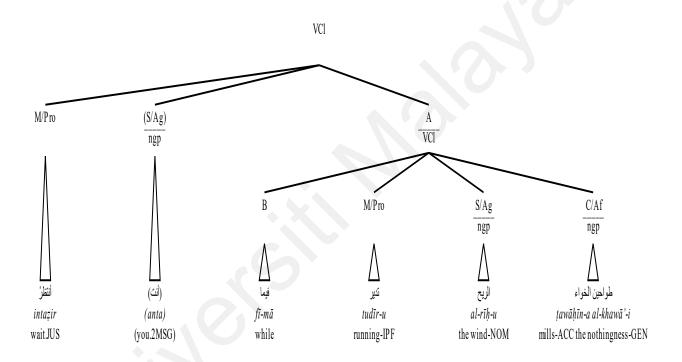
intazir fīmā tudīr-u al-rīḥ-u ṭawāḥīn-a wait.JUS.2MSG while running-IPF the wind-NOM mills-ACC al-khawā'-i

the nothingness-GEN

'Wait while the wind is running the mills of nothingness.' (VCl: Arti 4)

انتظر فيما تحمل الريح عواصف الجليد (4)

intazir fīmā taḥmil-u al-rīḥ-u 'awāṣif-a al-jalīd-i wait.JUS.2MSG while carrying-IPF the wind-NOM storms-ACC the ice-GEN 'Wait while the wind is carrying the ice storms.' (VCl: Arti 4)



Wait while the wind is running the mills of nothingness.

Figure 7.3: Functional analysis of an 'environmental' Process with Agent and Affected as the PRs

carrying-IPF

the wind-NOM

Wait while the wind is carrying the ice storms.

while

wait.JUS

(you.3MSG)

Figure 7.4: Functional analysis of another 'environmental' two-role Process that expresses doing

Examples (3) and (4), illustrated in Figures 7.3 and 7.4, are made of two clauses: matrix and bound. Both clauses convey a 'material action' meaning, and the 'environmental' Processes exist in the second bound clauses. These verbs are two-role Processes because they involve a Subject that is conflated with the Agent and a Complement that is conflated with the Affected. The Subject in both examples is the ngp (tal-rīḥu) (the wind) which represents the natural force that brings about change to the Complements that are واصف الجابد (tawāḥīna al-khawā'i) (the mills of nothingness) and عواصف الجابد ('awāṣifa al-jalīdi) (the ice storms). Consequently, the conclusion that can be drawn is that MSA does not have the 'environmental Process' type that is zerorole, as is the case with English. Rather, Processes that express 'environmental' meaning are part of the 'material action' Processes because they are construed as either one-role

storms-ACC the ice-GEN

Processes of happening with affected only or two-role Processes of doing with the Agent and Affected PRs.

7.2.2 One-Role Processes

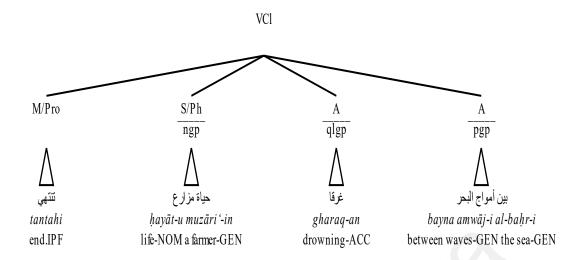
The CG has abandoned the distinction made by Halliday between Agent-centered Processes and Affected-centered Processes in discussing ergativity vs. transitivity. Instead, the CG prefers to focus on the number of Participant Roles associated with each type providing a new-termed distinction called one-role Processes vs. two-role Processes (Neale, 2002, p. 81). To put it another way, the intransitive types of verbs are referred to as one-role Processes because they predict one Participant Role that is syntactically conflated with the Subject. The semantic Participant Role that is conflated with this Subject varies according to the senses those lexical verbs express. In English, two types of Processes predict one-role PR: 'material action' and 'influential' Processes. In 'influential' Processes, the Subject is conflated with the Participant Role of the Phenomenon in clauses that express an 'influential' meaning. Neale (2002, p. 242) referred to this type as 'starting being' group of Processes. Let us consider examples (5) and (6) below.

تنتهي حياة مزارع غرقا بين أمواج البحر (5)

tantahi hayāt-u muzāri '-in gharaq-an bayna drowning-ACC end.IPF life-NOM a farmer-GEN between amwāj-i al-bahr-i waves-GEN the sea-GEN 'A farmer's life ends up drowning in the waves of the sea.' (VCl: Arti 5)

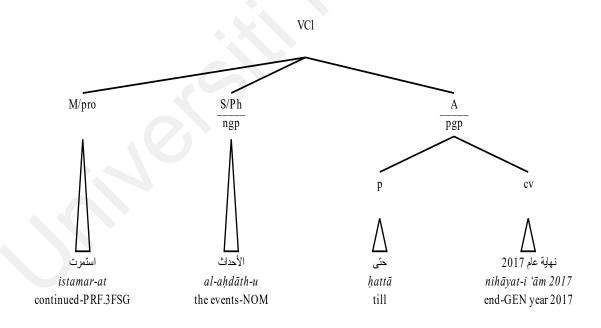
استمرت الأحداث حتى نهاية عام 2017 (6)

istamar-at al-aḥdāth-u ḥattā nihāyat-i 'ām 2017 continued-PRF.3FSG the events-NOM till end-GEN year 2017 'The events continued till the end of 2017.' (VCl: Edit 4)



A farmer's life ends up drowning in the waves of the sea.

Figure 7.5: Functional analysis of an 'influential' Process with Phenomenon as the only PR



The events continued till the end of 2017.

Figure 7.6: Functional analysis of another one-role 'influential' Process

As illustrated by Figure 7.5, the clause is made of the Main verb تنتهى (tantahi) (end) followed by a ngp functioning as the Subject عناة مزارع (hayatu muzāri 'in) (a farmer's life) that is semantically conflated with the Phenomenon. The item غرفا (gharqan) (drowning) is analyzed in Arabic as المقال (hāl) (adverb of manner), which is equivalent to Circumstantial Role in terms of semantics and Adjunct in terms of syntax. Similarly, example (6), demonstrated in Figure 7.6, consists of استعراف (istamarat) (continued) Main verb المقال (al-aḥdāthu) (the events) Subject 2017 الأحداث (hatta nihāyati 'ām 2017) (till the end of 2017) Adjunct]. The Subject is conflated with the Phenomenon in a clause that expresses an 'influential' meaning. It should be mentioned that the Processes of 'end' and 'continue' can express another sense that predicts two PRs if they occur in contexts that demand the causer to be mentioned (Fawcett, forthcoming c).

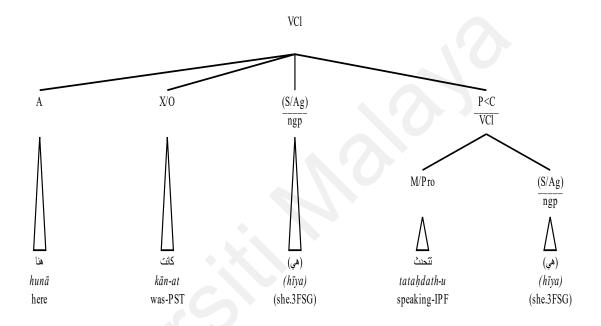
Likewise, 'action' Processes include verbs that are associated with one Participant Role. According to Neale (2002, p. 240), 'material action' Processes include Processes that are known as inherently 'affected only' action Processes. Neal (2002) stated that these Processes involve four categories: 'stopping being', 'change of state', 'voluntary behavior', and 'emission'. Fawcett (forthcoming c, p. 54) simply re-classified them into four categories: 'Agent only', 'Affected only', 'Carrier only', and 'Created only'. The first category of one-role 'material action' Processes is called 'Agent only' Processes wherein the Subject is conflated with the Agent because that Agent causes the happening of the action, as shown below in Figures 7.7 and 7.8. This group of Processes is known as 'change of state' Processes because they involve a change in direction, quality, material, features, etc. (Neale, 2002). Let us consider examples (7) and (8).

هنا كانت تتحدث (7)

hunā kān-at tataḥdath-u
here was-PST.3FSG speaking-IPF.3FSG
'Here, she was speaking.' (VCl: Edit 3)

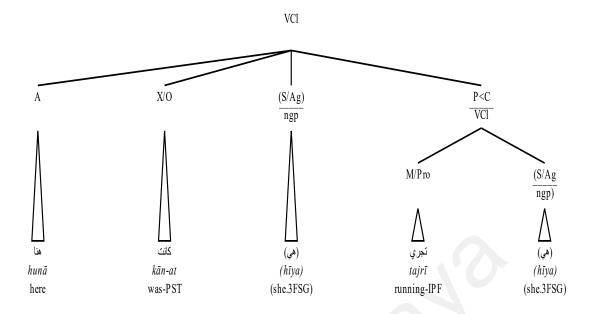
هنا كانت تجري (8)

hunā kān-at tajrī here was-PST.3FSG running-IPF.3FSG 'Here, she was running.' (VCl: Edit 3)



Here, she was speaking.

Figure 7.7: Functional analysis of a 'material action' Process with Agent as the only PR



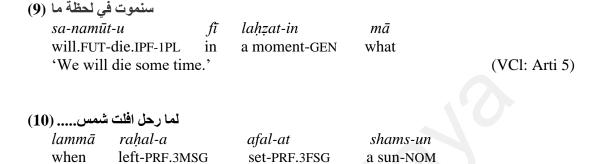
Here, she was running.

Figure 7.8: Functional analysis of another 'Agent only' Process

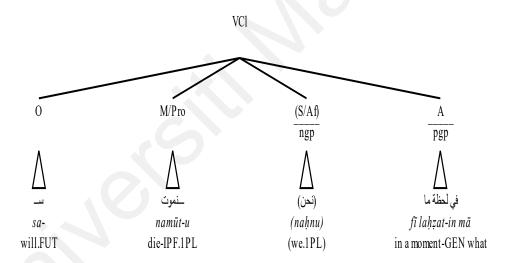
Figures 7.7 and 7.8 represent the functional analysis of examples (7) and (8). These two examples consist of an embedded clause including 'material action' Processes with an identical structure that consists of [الله (hunā) (here) Adjunct + كانت (kānat) (was) Auxiliary + (hīya) (she) covert Subject + verbal clausal Complement of the Auxiliary]. The embedded Complement of the Auxiliary is filled by a verbal clause made of the imperfect Main verbs تحدث (tataḥdathu) (speaking-she) in example (7) and جمري (tajrī) نجري (hīya) (she) in example (8). The Subject in both embedded clauses is covert assumed as $(h\bar{t}ya)$ (she) inferred from the morpheme (ta-) prefixed to both lexical verbs. The Subject is conflated with the Agent that is responsible for doing the action.

Additionally, within the 'change of state' group of Processes, which are one-role 'material action' Processes, the second category of one-role Processes known as inherently 'Affected only' Processes exists. In this category, the Subject is not conflated

with the Agent but with the Affected semantic role. These 'Affected only' action Processes are inherently associated with only one PR. Let us consider examples (9) and (10) below wherein the Subject is conflated with the Affected in the ergative structure of one-role Processes.



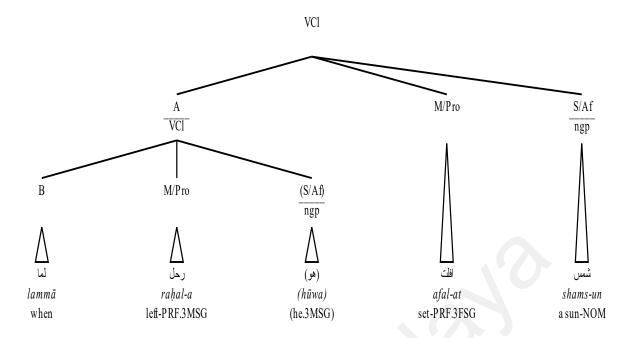
'When he passed away, a sun set...'



We will die some time.

Figure 7.9: Functional analysis of a 'material action' Process with Affected as the only PR

(VCl: Edit2)



When he passed away, a sun set...

Figure 7.10: Functional analysis of another 'Affected only' Process

The Main verbs نعوت (namūtu) (die-we) in example (9) express a 'material action' meaning that involves one Participant Role which is Affected. The reason is the Subject does not cause the event of dying. At the same time, the Main verb 'die' does not have the potential to extend to another element. The particle — (sa-) (will) prefixed to the verb in the imperfective mode is the Operator that indicates the future tense. The covert Subject is assumed as the first person plural نحن (naḥnu) (we). Similarly, example (10) consists of two clauses joined by the Particle المالة (lamma) (when). The Main verb الفات (afalat) (setshe) in the matrix clause and the verb رحل (raḥala) (passed away-he) in the bound clause do not require Complements as they are inherently 'affected only' action Processes. The Process (raḥala) (passed away-he) in the bound clause is not a 'directional' Process that denotes a physical movement to a certain destination done by the Subject. It instead

means the passing away or death of someone. Therefore, events in these clauses merely happen regardless of the Agent or the object that causes this event to happen.

On the other hand, Fawcett (forthcoming c, pp. 56-57) emphasizes that the distinctive point about some 'Affected only' Processes is the 'ergative structure' in which Processes can occur either as one-role Affected Processes [Pro + Af] or as two-role Processes [Pro + Ag + Af]. The Processes of 'speak' and 'run', discussed in examples (7) and (8) above, can occur as two-role Processes, i.e., Agent plus Affected Processes. This happens when the effect of the action caused by the Agent passes over to the Complement. Identifying whether a certain lexical verb includes one PR or more is done by studying the verb sense in relation to the context in which it occurs. Yet, in addition to the context, the morphological patterns of Main verbs in MSA play an essential role in determining whether the Process is associated with the semantic Participant Roles of Affected only or Agent plus Affected. Let us consider examples (11) and (12) in which the Processes are 'material action' Processes of one PR.

نتشابه أحياناً (11)

natasḥāba-hu aḥyānan made similar-IPF.1PL sometimes

'We are sometimes similar.'

(VCl: Arti 2)

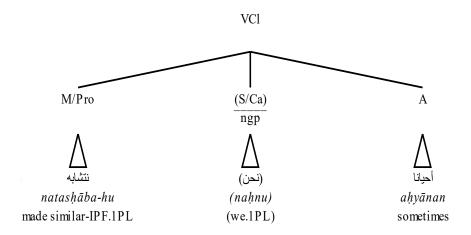
تخاوى أولاده وأولادي منذ الصغر (12)

takhā-wāawlād-u-huwa awlā-dīminthumade brother-PRFchildren-NOM-his.POSSand children-my.POSSsinceal-ṣighar-ial-ṣighar-i

the childhood-GEN

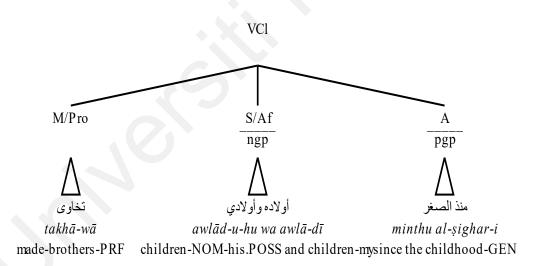
'His children and my children were made brothers since childhood.'

(VCl: Edit 3)



We are sometimes similar.

Figure 7.11: Functional analysis of an ergative structure where the Subject is conflated with the Carrier



His children and my children were made brothers since childhood

Figure 7.12: Functional analysis of an ergative structure where the Subject is conflated with the Affected

Without referring to the Agent or the causer, the verb sense نتشابه (natashābaḥu) (made similar), in example (11) shown in Figure 7.11, allows the expression of having similarity with other people while the verb تخاوى (takḥāwā) (made brothers) in example (12), Figure 7.12, means becoming brothers with other children. The senses associated with the Processes of نتشابه (natashābahu) (made similar) and تخاوى (takhāwā) (made brothers) are brought about by something else that the writer might not know or find unnecessary to mention. The morphological patterns of both verbs which are نتشابه (natafā 'al) in نتشابه (natasḥābaḥu) (made similar) and تفاعل (tafā 'ala) in تخاوى (takḥāwā) (made brothers) inherently render ergative structures in Arabic. This is in line with what Bardi (2008, pp. 3-257) discussed on the ergative system listing the morphological patterns of one-role Processes. The Subject is interestingly conflated with Carrier in example (11) because it fails to pass the tests for Affected and Agent whilst it is conflated with Affected in example (12). Having found the Subject in example (11) conflated with the Carrier even though the verb's sense does not involve either substance emission or sound emission, we highlight that the ergative system in Arabic occurs in 'material action' Processes, but Subjects do not always need to be conflated with Affected. Ergative structure in Arabic might extend to other types of Processes, such as 'relational' beside 'material' Processes, as example (11) shows. When the verb in example (11) is made transitive with the construction of [M + S + C], it expresses a 'relational matching' meaning where the Subject is conflated with the Carrier, and the Complement is conflated with the Matchee, which will be discussed in Section 7.2.3 on two-role Processes.

Moreover, the last two categories of one-role Processes that convey 'material action' meanings are those which expect one PR conflated with different semantic roles other than Agent or Affected. These semantic roles are Carrier and Created. In example (13), the Subject is conflated with the Carrier but with the Created in example (14).

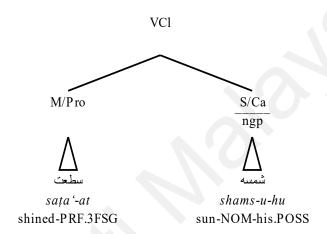
سطعت شمسه (13)

saṭa '-at shams-u-hu shined-PRF.3FSG sun-NOM-his.POSS

His sun shined..... (VCl: Edit 2)

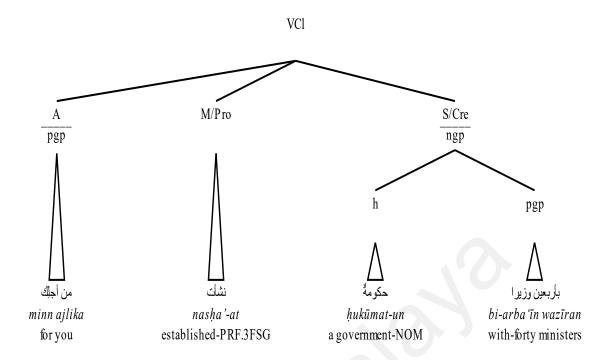
من أجلِك نشأت حكومة بأربعين وزيرا (14)

min ajlika nasḥa'-at ḥukūmat-un bi-arba'īn wazīran for you established-PRF.3FSG a government-NOM with-forty ministers 'A government of forty ministers was established for you.' (VCl: Arti 4)



His sun shined...

Figure 7.13: Functional analysis of a 'Carrier only' Process



A government of forty ministers was established for you.

Figure 7.14: Functional analysis of a 'Created only' Process

that consists of two elements [عطعت (sata'at) (shined) perfective Main verb + على (shamsu-hu) (his sun) Subject]. The Subject here is conflated with the Carrier because it is an object whose Process conveys the emission of light (Fawcett, forthcoming c; Neale, 2002). In fact, this clause also has an idiomatic meaning because it means that he became well-known at a particular time in his life. Figure 7.14, on the other hand, illustrates example (14) wherein the Subject is conflated with the semantic role of Created. When Fawcett (forthcoming c, p. 59) discussed 'material action' Processes with one PR that is conflated with the Created, he mentioned two lexical verbs as examples: 'being born' and 'come into being'. In example (14), the Main verb is semantically realized by the Process (nasḥa'at) (established/came into being). This Process can occur with two PRs if the Agent is deliberately mentioned as the causer of the action in certain contexts.

Thus, MSA includes structures that reflect the systems of Transitivity and ergativity alike. Arabic is marked by many Processes that inherently predict one Participant Role that is syntactically realized by the Subject. The semantic role associated with the Subject varies per the senses expressed by the clause Main verbs. Whether a certain structure is ergative or not is determined by the context in which the lexical verb occurs and the morphological patterns of the clauses' Main verbs (conjugation forms). Therefore, variation of the verb patterns brings about change in the number of elements associated with the clause Processes and the semantic roles conflated with them.

7.2.3 Two-Role Processes

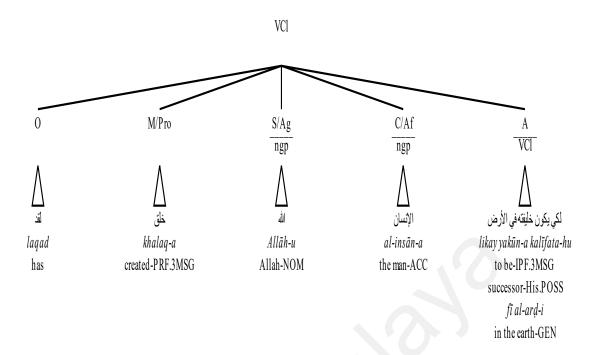
Two-role Processes are generally described as the most frequent type since two Participant Roles are inherently predicted by the Processes: the Subject and the Complement (Neale, 2002). While one-role Processes occur in certain limited types of Processes, such as 'material action' and influential Processes, this type almost occurs in all Process types. Let us consider examples (15) and (16) below in which both PRs are overtly realized and filled by ngps.

لقد خلق الله الإنسان لكي يكون خليفته في الأرض (15)

Allāh-u lagad khalag-a al-insān-a likay yakūn-a has created-PRF.3MSG Allah-NOM the man-ACC be-IPF.3MSG to kalīfata-hu al-ard-i fī successor-His.POSS the earth-GEN 'Allah has created man to be his successor on the earth.' (VCl: Edit1)

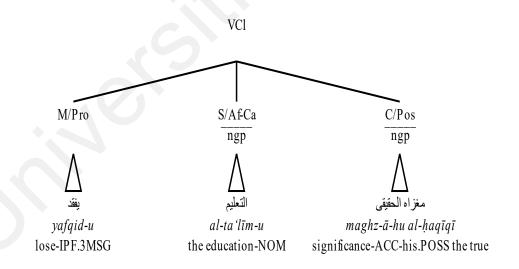
يفقد التعليم مغزاه الحقيقى (16)

yafqid-ual-ta'līm-umaghz-ā-hual-ḥaqīqīlose-IPF.3MSGthe education.NOMsignificance-ACC-his.POSSthe true'Education loses its true significance.'(VCl: Arti 2)



Allah has created man to be his successor on the earth.

Figure 7.15: Functional analysis of a two-role 'material action' Process



Education loses its true significance.

Figure 7.16: Functional analysis of a two-role 'relational attributive' Process

As illustrated in Figures 7.15 and 7.16, the Subjects are filled by ngps which are الله (Allāhu) (Allah) in example (15) and التعليم (al-ta 'līmu) (education) in example (16). Similarly, the elements that occupy the position of Complements in both examples are filled by ngps which are الأنسان (al-insāna) (the man) and مغزاه الحقيقي (maghzā-hu al-haqīqī) (its true significance), respectively. Both clauses express different meanings as example (15) expresses a 'material action' meaning in which the Subject is conflated with the Agent, and the Complement is conflated with the Affected; example (16), on the other hand, conveys a 'relational possessive' meaning in which the Subject is conflated with the Affected-Carrier because it is not human, and the Complement is conflated with the Possessed because it is not a physical thing. The element is (laqad) (has/have) in example (15) is an Operator that emphasizes completing the action in the past because it occurs with the perfect verb form.

As said earlier in Section 7.2, when the Subject is not overtly realized in the formal structure of the clause, it must be assumed on the ground of the Main verb morphological patterns and inflections. The Subject might come as a suffixed morpheme that reflects its gender, number, and person. Examples (17) and (18) below show how Subjects are identified when they are either covert or bound morphemes.

امتلك قلبا مليئا بالحب لكل البشر (17)

imtala-ka qalb-an malī'-an bil-ḥub-i li-kuli possessed-PRF.3MSG a heart-ACC full-ACC with the-love-GEN to-all-GEN a l-bashar-i

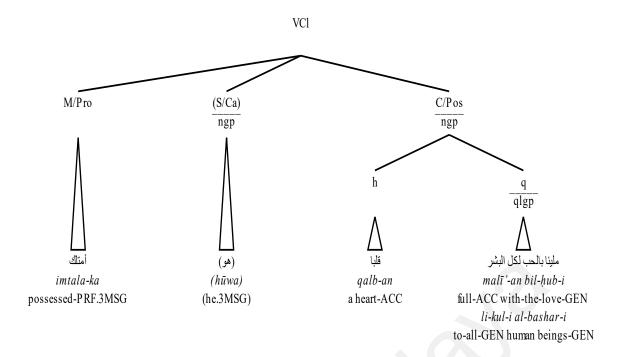
the human beings-GEN.

'He possessed a heart full of love for all the human beings.' (VCl: Edit 1)

انتقلنا إلى منزل آخر (18)

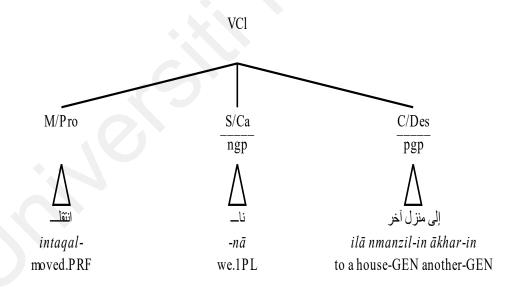
intaqal- $n\bar{a}$ $il\bar{a}$ manzil-in $\bar{a}khar$ -in moved.PRF-we.1PL.SBJ to a house-GEN another-GEN

'We moved to another house.' (VCl: Edit 3)



He possessed a heart full of love for all the human beings.

Figure 7.17: Functional analysis of a 'relation possessive' Process with a covert Subject



We moved to another house.

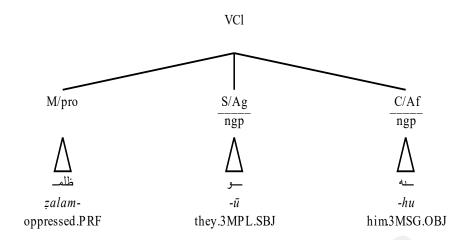
Figure 7.18: Functional analysis of a 'relational directional' Process with a suffixed Subject

In example (17), represented by Figure 7.17, the Subject is neither a ngp nor a suffixed morpheme. Instead, it does not occur explicitly in the surface structure of the clause. Therefore, the inflectional and morphological pattern renders it as (hūwa) (he), the Christ in the previous context. The Process which is syntactically realized by the perfect Main verb (imtala-ka) (possessed-he) expresses a 'relational possessive' meaning wherein the Subject (hūwa) (he)is conflated with the Carrier whereas the Complement (qalnan) (a heart) is conflated with the Possessed. Example (18) is also a simple verbal clause whose Process expresses a 'relational directional' meaning represented by the perfect prepositional verb (intaqal-nā) (moved-we). As shown in Figure 7.18, the Subject is a suffixed morpheme realized as (-nā) (we), which refers to the first-person plural, and it is conflated with the Carrier. The Complement, which is filled by a pgp (idā manzilin ākḥarin) (to a different house), is semantically conflated with the Destination because the clause expresses a 'relational directional' meaning.

Importantly, as MSA is characterized by its inflectional and morphological system, the Subject and the Complement can occur as bound suffixed morphemes to the Main verb, as demonstrated in examples (19) below.

ظلموه (19) zalam-ū-hu oppressed.PRF-they.3MPL.SBJ-him.3MSG.OBJ 'They oppressed him.'

(VCl: Edit 2)



They oppressed him.

Figure 7.19: Functional analysis of a 'material social' Process with suffixed Subject and Complement

As Figure 7.19 demonstrates, example (19) is made of only one item with attached suffixes: [the Main verb + Subject + Complement]. The Subject is a suffixed morpheme $-(-\bar{u})$ (they) attached to the Main verb $-(-\bar{u})$ (oppressed) while the Complement is another suffixed morpheme -(-hu) (him) referring to the third-person singular masculine. The clause Process expresses a 'social action' meaning of dealing with someone in an unfair way. As a result, the Subject is conflated with the Agent while the Complement is conflated with the Affected.

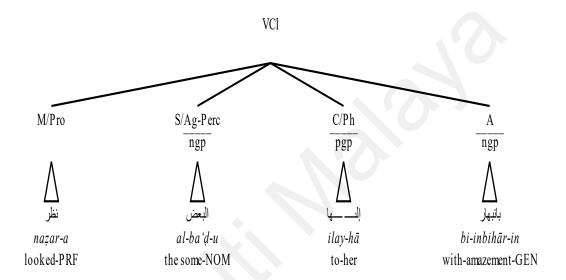
The unit that fills the Complement position is not restricted to the noun group class of units. The Complement could also be filled by a pgp, a qlgp, or bigger units like non-finite clauses. Example (20) shows a verbal clause wherein a pgp is filling the element of the Complement, while in example (21) the Complement is filled by a qlgp.

نظر البعض إليها بانبهار (20)

nazar-a al-ba'ḍ-u ilay-hā bi-inbihār-in looked-PRF the some-NOM to-her with-amazement.GEN 'Some looked at it with amazement.' (VCl: Edit 5)

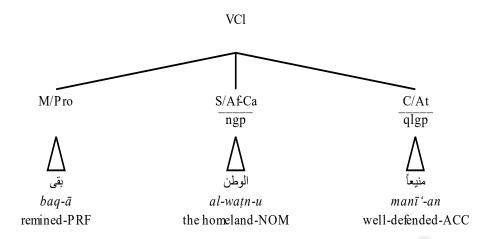
بقى الوطن منيعاً (21)

baq-ā al-waṭn-u manī'-an
remained-PRF the homeland-NOM well-defended-ACC
'The homeland remained well-defended.' (VCl: Edit 4)



Some looked at it with amazement.

Figure 7.20: Functional analysis of a 'mental perception' Process where the Complement is filled by a pgp



The homeland remained well-defended.

Figure 7.21: Functional analysis of a 'relational Process where a qlgp fills the Complement

MSA includes verbs combined with prepositions to convey either literal meaning or idiomatic phrasal meaning (Aldahesh, 2016). The Process in example (20), as illustrated in Figure 7.20, is syntactically realized by the prepositional verb نظر (naẓara) (looked). The Subject is filled by the ngp البعث (al-ba 'du) (some) whereas the Complement is filled by a pgp البها (ilay-hā) (at her). The clause expresses the 'mental perception' meaning of looking or seeing something. As a result, the Subject is conflated with the Agent-Perceiver while the Complement is conflated with the Phenomenon. The second Participant Role is directly conflated with the Complement which is the prepositional group البها (ilay-hā) (at her). The last element is an Adjunct of manner that is filled by a pgp البها (bi-inbihārin) (with-amazement) to express manner. On the other hand, example (21) is made of the Subject which is a ngp الوطن (nanī 'an) (well-defended). The Complement which is filled by a qlgp منيعا (manī 'an) (well-defended). The Complement which is filled by a qlgp منيعا (manī 'an) (well-defended). The Complement accusative case. As Figure 7.21 demonstrates, the clause sense is associated with the 'relational attributive' meaning. Therefore, the Subject is experientially conflated

with the Affected-Carrier as the change in the state of the homeland is caused by something or someone else rather than the Subject itself, and the Complement is conflated with the Attribute.

Furthermore, the Complement can be filled by bigger units, such as non-finite clauses or event nouns.⁶ These clauses are embedded clauses filling the element of the Complement. Examples (22) and (23) demonstrate verbal clauses whose Complements are filled by two non-finite clauses of different structures.

أؤمن بأنّ البحريني مبدع (22)

 \bar{u} '-min-u bi-anna al-Bahrayn $\bar{\imath}$ -a mubdi'un believe-IPF.1SG with-that the Bahraini-ACC creative-NOM

'I believe that the Bahraini man is creative.' (VCl: Arti 1)

أردتُ مشاركتكم لحظات تأمل خاصة (23)

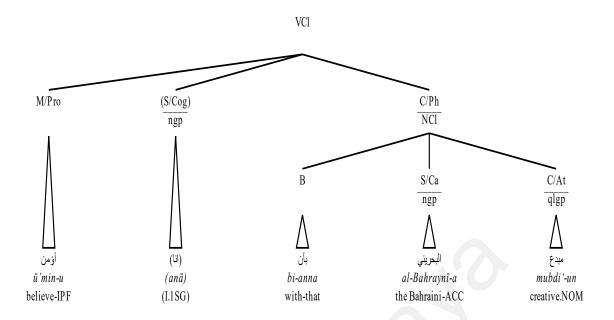
arad-tu mushārakati-kum laḥazāt ta'mul-in wanted-IPF.1SG sharing.PTCP-you.2MPL moments meditation-GEN khāsat-in

special-GEN

'I wanted sharing with you special meditation moments.'

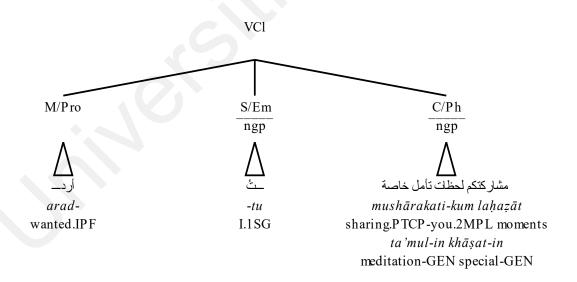
(VCl: Arti 4)

⁶ According to Fawcett (forthcoming c, p. 129), nominalization or nominal group can have two types: a) it might include an event noun made of the equivalent lexical verb as the head, such as 'participation' or 'participating'; b) it might include an event thing that has no equivalent lexical head, such as 'departure' and 'birth'.



I believe that the Bahraini man is creative.

Figure 7.22: Functional analysis of a two-role 'mental cognition' Process wherein the Complement is filled by a non-finite clause



I wanted sharing with you special meditation moments.

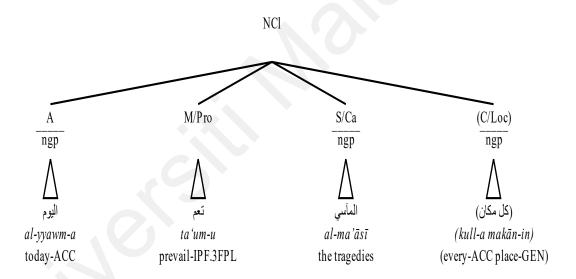
Figure 7.23: Functional analysis of a 'mental emotion' Process whose Complement is filled by an event noun

As Figures 7.22 shows, the clausal Complement in example (22) is a non-finite embedded clause introduced by the Binder بابن (bi-anna) (that). It is made of [البحريني (bi-anna) (that) Binder بابن (al-Bahraynī-a) (the Bahraini man) Subject + بابدريني (mubdi 'un) (creative) Complement]. In example (24), the Complement comes in the form of a partial clause or nominalized lexical verb مشار (mushārakati-kum) (sharing-you), known as an event noun in the CG. The Processes in both examples express a 'mental' meaning with different sub-types. In example (22), the Process of القام (ū'minu) (believe-I) expresses a 'mental cognition' meaning which makes the Subject conflated with the Cognizant, whereas the Complement is conflated with the Phenomenon. Example (23), on the other hand, has the Main verb أردت (arad-tu) (wanted-I) as the Process which expresses a 'mental emotion desiderative' meaning. As Figure 7.23 illustrates, the Subject is conflated with the Emoter, and the nominalized Complement is Conflated with the Phenomenon. Several examples that reflect different meanings associated with the various types of Processes have been found in MSA, which cannot be presented in this study.

However, the second Participant Role, which is syntactically conflated with the element of Complement, could be ellipted from the structure of the clause for specific purposes. Fawcett (2012b, p. 8) has stated four reasons for having an expected PR as covert: 1) to avoid mentioning who is responsible for doing the action, 2) recoverability by the addressee, 3) the performance's lack of information, and 4) irrelevance to the performer's goals. The first, third, and fourth reasons are claimed to apply to the PR that is conflated with the Subject, commonly in the passive voice. The second and the fourth reasons are thought to motivate the deletion of the Complement. The deletion of the Complement from the surface structure of the clause is plausible when it is recoverable or irrelevant to the performer's goals. Examples (24) and (25) below show Processes with inherently predicted Complements which are covert because the Complement in example

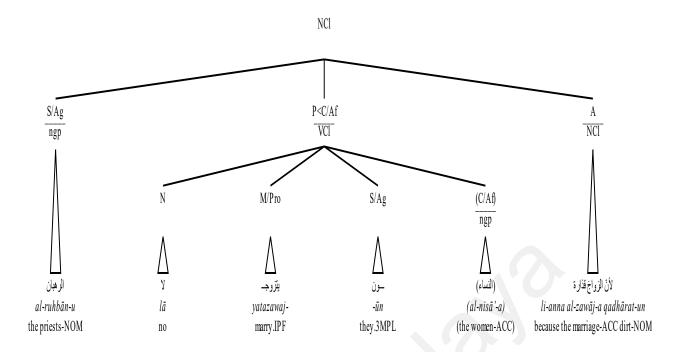
(24) is easily understood from the discourse itself. The Complement in example (25) is probably considered unimportant to be mentioned as it is irrelevant to the writer's goals.

اليوم، تعم المآسى (24) al-yyawm-a, taʻum-u al-ma'āsī the tragedies today-ACC, prevail-IPF.3FPL 'Today, tragedies prevail.' (VCl: Edit 1) الرهبان لا يتزوجون، لأنّ الزواج قذارة (25) al-ruhbān-u lā yatazawaj-ūn li-anna al-zawāj-a the priests-NOM not marry.IPF-they.3MPL because the marriage-ACC gadhārat-un dirt-NOM 'Priests do not marry because marriage is dirt.' (NCl: Arti 4)



Today, tragedies prevail.

Figure 7.24: Functional analysis of a 'relational location' Process with a covert Complement



Priests do not marry because marriage is dirt.

Figure 7.25: Functional analysis of a 'material social' Process with a covert Complement

In example (24), the Process is syntactically realized by the Main verb تعم (ta'umu) (prevail), which expresses a 'relational locational' meaning. Therefore, it inherently expects two PRs: the Carrier filling the Subject's position, and the Location conflated with the Complement. Yet, the second PR filling the Complement slot is not explicitly realized in the surface structure of the clause. However, this covert element must be assumed and identified in doing the functional analysis in the CG. It could be recoverable from the previous discourse as the ngp كل مكان (kulla makānin) (every place/everywhere). What concerns the writer in the current discourse is not where the tragedies prevail but rather the thing that prevails. As Figure 7.25 shows, example (25) is not a verbal clause, but a nominal clause as the Subject is placed pre-verbally; such a movement turns the verbal clause into nominal (see Chapter 6). As a result, the topicalized Subject is the ngp

(al-ruhbānu) (the priests) while its Complement is filled by an embedded verbal الدهبان clause, which is our concern here. This embedded verbal clause is made of $[Y(l\bar{a})]$ (not) Negator + يتزوج (yatazawaj) (marry) Main verb in the imperfective + ون (-ūn) (they) suffixed Subject]. The Process in the embedded verbal clause filling the position of the Predicate is syntactically realized by the Main verb يتزوج (yatazawaj) (marry), which inherently predicts two-role PRs. According to Fawcett (forthcoming c), the Process 'marry' expresses either a 'material action' meaning or a 'relational matching' meaning. Deciding on which meaning the Process 'marry' conveys depends on the performer's or writer's point of view on this type of relationship. In other words, if the society is maledominated, then the Process tends to express the 'material action' meaning in which the Subject, typically the man, is conflated with the Agent, whereas the Complement, typically the woman, is conflated with the Complement (Fawcett, forthcoming c). The reason is that this Process reflects the sexual relationship between socially unequal partners. On the contrary, if this text is written in modern western society, this Process might express a 'relational matching' meaning because both PRs are seen as socially equal, especially if the writer uses such Processes as 'go with', 'clash with', 'fit', etc. Thus, the Subject is conflated with the Agent-Carrier, and the Complement is conflated with the Matchee (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 69). In addition to this, the second analysis of 'relational matching' meaning is also prioritized in a clause wherein both 'male and female' occupy the position of the Subject, and the second PR is not syntactically explicit, such as 'Eric and Alice got married'. Thus, the Complement would be assumed as 'each other'.

In studying the context in which the clause in example (25) occurs, the study adopts the first functional analysis that considers the Process of (yatazawaj) (marry) as 'material action'. That is because I, as the analyst, assume that the writer in the current text uses this Process to refer to marriage as a sexual relationship rather than as a social

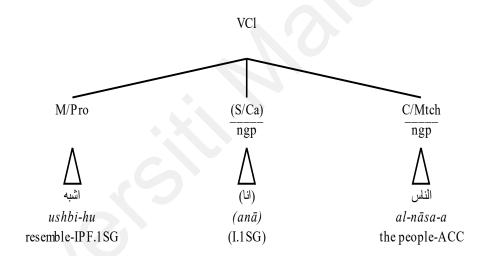
matching event. This analysis is based on two shreds of evidence. The first evidence is that the covert Complement cannot be assumed as 'each other because the Subject is already occupied by a male referent, i.e., الرهبان (al-ruhbānu) (the priests), so the Complement could only be assumed as المنافعة (al-nisā'a) (women). The second evidence comes from the bound clause that follows النواج فَذَارِة (li-anna al-zawāja qadhāratun) (because marriage is dirt). If the writer meant marriage as a social matching relation, he would not describe it as a dirty thing for priests. The reason for leaving the slot of the expected Complement النساء (al-nisā'a) (women) empty is that the writer might want the clause to end with the act of marriage to place more prominence on it as being 'New Information'. The writer might also attempt to make the text more conservative when he avoids mentioning women to draw the readers' attention away from the sexual meaning. At the same time, mentioning women is not related to the aims of the message intended to convey in the current context. Rather, what concerns the writer is that marriage is not a socially virtuous act done by those supposed to be true priests.

The last point to be discussed regarding two-role Processes is related to the 'ergative structure' discussed in Section 7.2.2 about one-role Processes. As mentioned in that section, the ergative system includes Processes that might have two constructions. The first construction occurs in terms of ergativity as inherently one-role Processes [Pro+ Af], see examples (11) and (12), while the second construction occurs in terms of transitivity as two-role Processes [Pro + Ag + Af]. To put it another way, these lexical verbs might confine themselves to only one PR if the event causer is not foregrounded, such as 'The door opened' and 'The snow melted'. Yet, they sometimes extend to have two PRs, such as 'I opened the door' and 'The sun melted the snow' because they are usually Processes of 'changing of state' or 'happening' only. The lexical verbs in examples (11) and (12), 'itakḥāwā) (made brothers), fall in this type of Process. As a result, examples (26) and (27) below present these one-role Processes when

they are made two-role Processes by foregrounding the causer of the event. Mentioning the causer of the event brings about a change in the morphological patterns of the verbs in the clause.

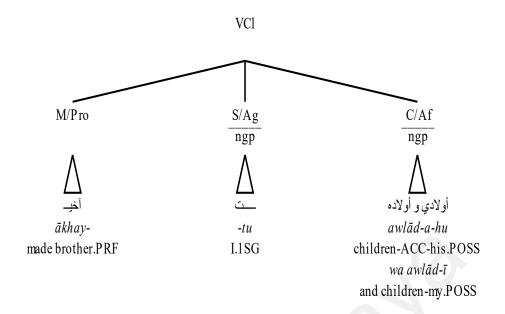
اشبه الناس (26) ushbi-hu al-nās-a resemble-IPF.1SG the people-ACC 'I resembled people.'

$ar{a}$ آخیت اُولاده واُولادي $ar{a}$ $ar{a$



I resembled people.

Figure 7.26: Functional analysis of an ergative structure made transitive



I made his children and my children brothers.

Figure 7.27: Functional analysis of another ergative structure made transitive

In example (26), as shown in Figure 7.26, the Main verb (ushbihu) (resemble-I) is the syntactic realization of a two-role Process that expresses a 'relational matching' meaning. The Subject which is covert here is conflated with the Carrier while the Complement, which is (al-nāsa) (the people), is conflated with the Matchee. Therefore, the ergative structure is not restricted to 'Affected only' Processes in the 'material' Processes because MSA displays ergativity with 'relational' Processes as well. In example (27), illustrated in Figure 7.27, the Process is syntactically realized by the Main verb أَخْنَتُ (ākhaytu) (made brothers-I), which also predicts two PRs in this context. The clause describes a 'social action' meaning with the Agent conflated with the Subject and the Affected conflated with the Complement (his children and my children). The Subject in example (26) is realized as the first person pronoun if (anā) (I) on the ground of the morphological verb patterns, while in example (27) it is reflected by the attached morpheme (-tu) (I) that refers to the first person singular.

In brief, as the data analysis has shown, two-role Processes occur most frequently in MSA with the tendency to have both PRs overt. The Complement in these two-role Processes could be filled by a ngp, a suffixed morpheme, a pgp, a qlgp, an event noun, or a non-finite clause. Therefore, the second PR predicted in two-role Processes tends to be explicitly realized in the linear surface of the clause structure unless the writer or speaker decides to make it implicit for specific reasons. The most common reason for making a Complement covert is the possibility to recover it from the current discourse, followed by being an unimportant element concerning what is being discussed. Yet, the study agrees with Fawcett (2012b, forthcoming c) that there might be other context-dependent pragmatic reasons for deleting the Complement predicted by the two-role Processes, which needs further research.

7.2.4 Three-Role Processes

Traditionally, verbs with two Complements are known as bi-transitive (Owens, 1988, p. 168). In terms of the CG, they are referred to as three-role Processes because the first PR is syntactically conflated with the Subject while the other two PRs are conflated with the Complements. Herein occurs the compound participant role, which is usually the first Complement that results from the combination of two Participant Roles. The CG also calls these Processes 'third party Agent' Processes because "a third party is introduced to what would be otherwise a two-role Process" (Neale, 2002, p. 141). To discuss this category in detail, three-role Processes will be classified into three sub-categories: three-role Processes with two nominal Complements, three-role Processes with Subject-and-Predicate Complements, and three-role Processes with different units of Complements. This classification is based on the different structural forms of the Complements as occurring in MSA.

7.2.4.1 Three-Role Processes with two nominal Complements

This category of three-role Processes is originally characterized by having two nominal Complements, one of which might be overtly unrealized in the clause linear surface structure. In other words, like English, these lexical verbs govern two Complements that come in the form of ngps. The clause remains meaningfully complete if the first Complement (traditionally known as indirect objects) is not overtly realized in its surface structure. For this category, some of the most common verbs that exist in this type are منح (gave) منح (manaḥa) (granted), سلب (salaba) (took), عنی (kasā) (beworn), عنی ('ayyana) (appointed), سنکی (sammā) (named), سال (sa'ala/ṭalaba) (asked), etc. The sense of these verbs is to cause someone to have something. Let us consider examples (28) and (29) below.

يجب أن نعطيهم حرية الإختيار (28)

yajib-u an nu ʻṭī-hum ḥuriyat-a must-NOM that give.IPF.SBJV.1PL.SBJ-them.3MPL.OBJ freedom-ACC al-ikhtiyār-i the choice-GEN

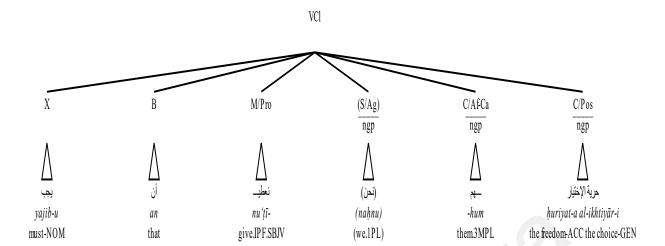
'We must give them the freedom of choice.' (VCl: Arti 2)

الهم العلى القدير ذويك الصبروالسلوان (29)

alham-a al-ʻalī-u al-qadīr-u dhawī-ki al-ṣabr-a granted-PRF Almighty-NOM family.ACC-your.POSS the patience-ACC wa al-silwān-a and the consolation-ACC

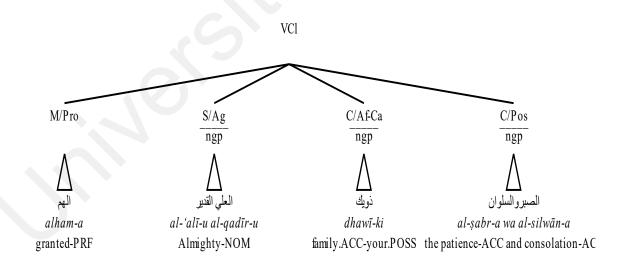
'May the Almighty bless your family with patience and consolation.'

(VCl: Edit 3)



We must give them the freedom of choice.

Figure 7.28: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational possessive' Process



May the Almighty grant your family patience and consolation.

Figure 7.29: Functional analysis of another three-role 'relational possessive' Process

The three-role Process in example (28), Figure 7.28, is syntactically represented by the Main verb نعطى (nu 't̄i-) (give-we), which demands two Complements. The first or indirect Complement comes in the form of a suffixed personal pronoun (-hum) (them) while the second is typically a ngp حرية الأختيار (huriyata al-ikhtiyāri) (freedom of choice). The Process expresses a 'relational possessive' meaning, so the Subject is experientially conflated with the Agent; the first attached Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, and the second Complement is conflated with the Possessed. The verbal clause in example (29) starts with the Main verb (alhama) (granted/bestowed) whose sense is also interpreted as to cause someone to have something. The Subject, as shown in Figure 7.29, is explicitly realized by the ngp العلى القدير (al-'līvu al-qadīru) (Almighty) that is conflated with the Agent. Explicit ngps fill the first and second Complements. The first Complement is نویك (dhawī-ki) (your family), and the second Complement is (al-sabra wa al-silwāna) (patience and consolation). Experientially, the clause also expresses a 'relational possessive' manning, so the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, while the second Complement represents the semantic role of Possessed.

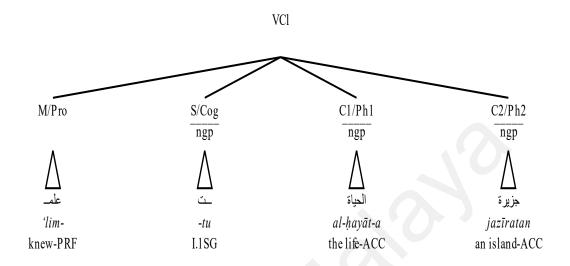
7.2.4.2 Three-Role Processes with Subject-and-Predicate Complements

The second category of bi-transitive verbs is those verbs whose Complements are syntactically and semantically conjoined to each other in the same way Subject and Predicate are bound in the simple nominal clause. According to Arabic syntax, these Processes enter a nominal clause which originally has the syntactic structure of (mubtada') (Subject) and خبر (khabar) (Predicate/Complement). Then, they turn what originally comes as the Subject in the nominative case into the first Complement in the accusative case, and what comes as the Predicate in the nominative case into the second Complement with the accusative case.

This category of verbs is known as ظن وأخواتها (zanna wa akhawātu-hā) (think and its sisters) or as افعال القلوب (af'ālu al-qulūb) (verbs of hearts) (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996; Ryding, 2005), which are construed here as 'mental cognition' Processes. That is because the sense associated with these verbs generally denotes an abstract state of knowing or thinking related to the mind. These verbs are classified into three sub-categories based on the sense they convey, including the sub-category أفعال التحويل (af'ālu al-taḥwīl) (verbs of causing change). The first sub-category is أفعال اليقين (af'ālu al-yaqīn) (verbs of certainty) which denotes certainty about something, such as عرف/علم ('rifa/'lima) (know), دری/رأی (darā/ra'ā) (come to know), and وجد/الف (wajada/alifā) (find); the second category is (af'ālu al-shak) (verbs of doubt) which means uncertainty about something, such as زعم (za'ma) (claim), and زعم (za'ma) (claim), فن/خال/حسب/حجا/هب ('dda) (considered); the third type is أفعال التحويل (af'ālu al-tahwīl) (verbs of causing change) which means bringing change to something, such as جعل/صير (ja'ala/sayyara) (make), ترك (raddā) (turn into), اتخذ (itakhadha) (take as) and ترك (taraka) (leave). Though the last sub-category of افعال التحويل (af'ālu al-taḥwīl) (verbs of causing change) also govern two Complements in MSA, they reflect different semantics which will be discussed in Section 7.2.4.4. Indeed, most of the syntax, phonology, and morphology of MSA are based on classical Arabic, yet MSA does not employ all the previous vocabularies because it displays somehow different styles and use of vocabularies (Ryding, 2005).

In analyzing these Processes, which denote 'consciousness' associated with the 'mental' meanings, the study provides two alternative accounts based on the presence of the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{G}}(anna)$ (that). In the first account, these verbs have two Complements rather than one. Example (30) below illustrates the first account that represents those verbs as three-role Processes. It shows a clause with a Subject-Complement structure that turns into verbal after it is introduced by the mental verb $\dot{\mathcal{G}}(alim-tu)$ (knew-I).

علمت الحياة جزيرة (30) 'lim-tu al-ḥayāt-a jazīrat-an knew-PRF.1SG the-life-ACC an island-ACC 'I knew life is an island.'



I knew life is an island.

Figure 7.30: Functional analysis of a 'mental cognition' Process as a three-role Process with two Complements

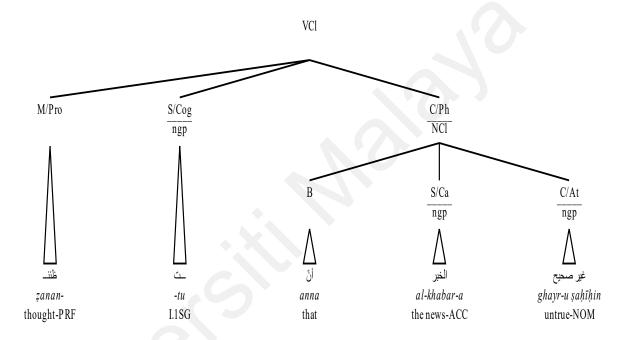
Example (30) demonstrated in Figure 7.30 used to be a nominal clause which is originally made of two elements in the nominative case [الحياة (al-ḥayātu) (the-life) Subject + غلاية (jazīratun) (an island) Complement] (Life is an island). When the bitransitive verb علمت ('alim-tu) (knew-I) enters such a clause, it changes the syntactic features of these elements by taking the Subject as its first Complement (al-ḥayāta) (the life) and the Predicate as its second Complement غلاية (jazīratan) (an island). Thus, an explicit change is brought about in the case endings of both elements as they become now Complements in the accusative case. What distinguishes this category from the aforementioned three-role Process category is that both Complements here are essential, and the clause cannot achieve complete meaningful thought without their presence. The first and the second Complements are interdependent as the second element is the one

that is intended to be told about. What the speaker comes to know is not life, but it is likening it to the island.

However, when the CG model account is applied to this category of 'mental cognition' Processes, a problem arises concerning the number of PRs predicted by these Processes. While this sub-category of verbs is analyzed as three-role Processes in Arabic, i.e., with two Complements as shown in Figure 7.30 (Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016), they are construed as only two-role Processes (one Complement) according to the CG. To put it another way, the CG views those verbs as 'mental cognition' Processes where the Subject is conflated with a conscious animate participant (Cognizant), while the Complement is conflated with the Phenomenon, which is a projected proposition. Nevertheless, Figure 7.30 demonstrates a different analysis from that of the CG because the Main verb governs two Complements: Complement 1 and Complement 2, which are semantically conflated with Phenomenon1 and Phenomenon2. Not only is it the presence of the second element that completes the clause's meaning, but it is also the first element about which the second element tells us. This fact makes the addition of the semantic role of the second Phenomenon necessary to match it with the second Complement. Such a finding confirms that MSA largely relies on case endings to determine the functions of clause elements (Abu-Mansour, 1986; Al-Liheibi, 1999),

On the other hand, the second account is that which is in line with the CG analysis of 'mental' Processes. These Arabic verbs sometimes confine themselves to governing only one Complement rather than two in a certain context. That is, when the Subject-Predicate structure is introduced by the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{C}}$ (anna) (that), these verbs then govern only one Complement which is typically filled by the projected embedded non-finite clause made of (Binder + Subject + Predicate/Complement) (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996; Ibn Hishām, 1991). In other words, these verbs take one Complement that semantically and syntactically

substitutes both Complements. Example (31) below is illustrative of a clause wherein the projected clause starts with the Binder \dot{i} (anna) (that), which occupies the verb's Complements.



I thought that the news is untrue.

Figure 7.31: Functional analysis of a two-role 'mental cognition' Process whose Complement is introduced by the Binder identical (that)

As Figure (31) shows, the clause's mental Process is syntactically realized by the Main verb نانت (zanan-) (thought) followed by the suffixed Subject morpheme (-tu) (I) and one clausal Complement. The Subject is semantically conflated with the Cognizant, while the Complement is conflated with the Phenomenon in a clause that expresses a 'cognition' meaning. The clause that fills the position of the Complement is made of أَنُ (anna) (that) الخبر (al-khabara) Subject+ غير صحيح (ghayru ṣaḥīḥin) (untrue) Complement].

Since it is introduced by the Binder $\mathring{\mathcal{U}}^{\dagger}$ (anna) (that), it is treated as one meaningful single projected unit made of the Subject and Complement. That is because the insertion of this Binder is not optional as it is in English. Rather, it is a strong governor that brings about a change not only in the cases of the following elements but also in the syntactic and semantic relationship that related it to the clause Process (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996). Due to the presence of this Binder that governs the adjacent elements as its Subject and Complement, the Main verb suffices to take only one Complement, which accords with Alazzawie (1990) when he considers $\mathring{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that) a complementizer governing ngps.

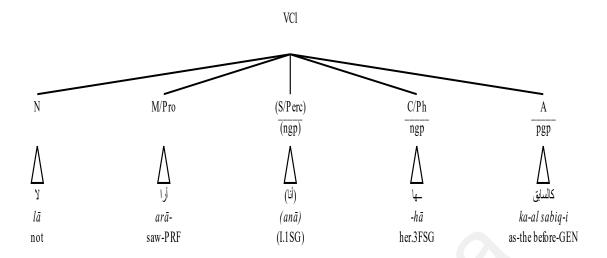
When these verbs involve the literal and physical meaning of 'sensing' or 'perceiving', hearing, finding, etc., these verbs, like English, are usually considered a sub-type of two-role 'mental' Processes known as 'Perception'. Such a fact conforms to the CG analysis that views these verbs as two-role Processes when they do not express cognition meaning. Let us consider the perceptional verb (arafa) (saw) in examples (32) and the verb (arafa) (knew) in example (33) that all express a 'perception' meaning.

لا أراها كالسابق (32)

lāarā-hāka-al sabiq-inotsaw-PRF.1SG.SBJ-her.3FSG.OBJas- the before-GEN'I do not see her as before.'(VCl: Edit 3)

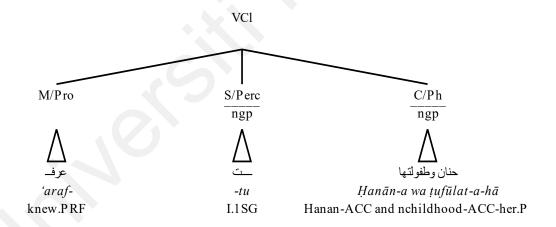
عرفت حنان وطفولتها (33)

'araf-tu Ḥanān-a wa ṭufūlat-a-hā knew-PRF.1SG Hanan-ACC and childhood-ACC-her.POSS 'I knew Hanan and her childhood.' (VCl: Edit 3)



I do not see her as before.

Figure 7.32: Functional analysis of a 'mental perception' Process



I knew Hanan and her childhood.

Figure 7.33: Functional analysis of عزف ('arafa) (knew) as a 'mental perception' Process

Figures 7.32 and 7.33 demonstrate two verbal clauses with only two PRs. The Main verbs أن (arā) (saw-I) in example (32) and عرفت ('araf-tu) (knew-I) in example (33) reflect a sense related to that of 'perception'. The Subject is covert in example (32) assumed as أن (anā) (I), while it is syntactically realized by the suffixed morpheme — (-tu) (I) in example (33). The Processes simply denote the physical sense of perceiving something. So, the Subject is conflated with the Perceiver in both instances, while the Complement is semantically conflated with the Phenomenon. The Phenomenon in both examples is not a clause or an event but a ngp: a suffixed pronoun (-hā) (her) in example (32) and a ngp خنان وطفولتها (Ḥanāna wa ṭufūlata-hā) (Hanan and her childhood) in example (33).

To sum up, the results obtained provide two alternative accounts of the 'mental cognition' Processes that express the abstract sense of knowing. The first account is that these Processes are analyzed as three-role Processes with two Complements when their Complements are not introduced by the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that). Consequently, the semantic role of a second Phenomenon is introduced to be conflated with the second Complement. The second account analyzes these 'mental cognition' Processes as two-role Processes if the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that) follows these Processes. Nevertheless, the most common frequent structure used in MSA is the latter structure introduced by the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that), which is identical to the CG analysis of the English 'mental cognition' verbs.

7.2.4.3 Three-Role Process with different units as Complements

Apart from the above sub-categories of verbs traditionally known as having two Complements, the CG has broadened the category of three-role Processes further to include other Processes whose second Complement is filled by units other than ngps, such as pgps, qlgps, etc. According to Fawcett (2011a), one of the difficulties of analyzing a

specific text is distinguishing PRs from CRs. A specific predicted PR might be mistakenly analyzed as a CR, which is not a part of the Transitivity system network. This confusion to identify the expected PR usually occurs when units other than ngps fill the Complement. The key to avoiding such confusion in the analysis process is to test and identify whether the second Complement is inherently predicted by these verbs or not, see Chapter 5, Section 5.6.1. Let us consider examples (34), (35), and (36) below.

ميز الله الإنسان بنعمة العقل (34)

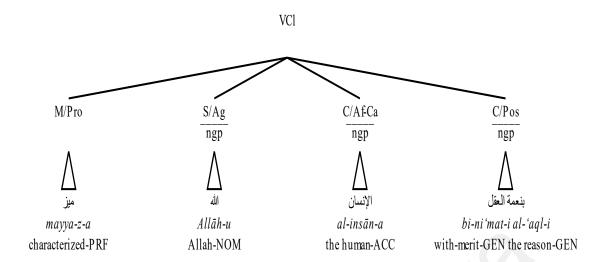
mayyaz-a Allāh-u al-insān-a bi-ni mat-i al-'aql-i characterized-PRF Allah-NOM the man-ACC with-merit-GEN the reason-GEN 'Allah characterized man with the merit of reason.' (VCl: Arti 1)

حولوا الأهرام إلى كيان أعرج (35)

hawal-ū al-Ahrām-a ilā kayān-in a 'raj-in turned.PRF-they.3MPL.SBJ al-Ahram-ACC to an entity-GEN lame-GEN 'They tuned al-Ahram into a helpless entity.' (VCl: Edit 2)

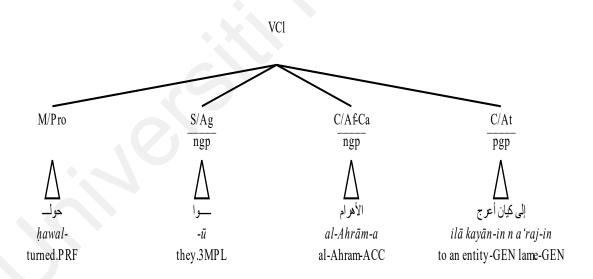
يجب أن نطرح على أنفسنا هذه التساؤلات (36)

yajib-u an naṭraḥ-a 'lā anfusi-nā hādhihi al-tasā'ūlāt must-NOM that put-IPF.SBJV.1PL on ourselves this the questions-GEN 'We must ask these questions to ourselves.' (VCl: Edit 1)



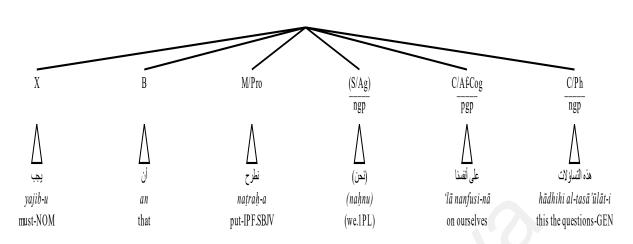
Allah characterized man with the merit of reason.

Figure 7.34: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational possessive' Process with a pgp filling the second Complement



They tuned al-Ahraminto a helpless entity

Figure 7.35: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational attributive' Process whose second Complement is filled by a pgp



We must ask these questions to ourselves.

Figure 7.36: Functional analysis of a three-role 'mental communication' Process with a pgp filling the first Complement

In MSA, the Processes عند (mayyaza) (characterized) in example (34) and والح (hawalū) (turned-they) in example (35) are considered two-tole Processes. The reason is that these verbs have one direct explicit Complement that is الإنسان (al-insāna) (the man) in example (34) and الأهرام (al-Ahrāma) (a Journal' name) in example (35). The pgps الأهرام (bi-ni'mati al-'aqli) (with the merit of reason) and المعقل (ilā kayānin a'rajin) (into a helpless identity), which follow the direct Complements in both examples, are construed as circumstantial roles related semantically to the preceding Complements. Yet, the study follows the CG that disagrees with such a traditional analysis and instead analyzes these two pgps as the second Complements. These Complements are inherently expected by the Processes and without which the clauses cannot achieve a complete meaningful message. In terms of semantics, the clause in Figure 7.34 conveys a 'relational possessive' meaning of three PRs whose Subject is experientially conflated with the Agent, the first ngp Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, and the second pgp Complement is conflated with the Possessed. Similarly, Figure 7.35 represents the functional analysis of example (35) whose clause expresses a 'relational attributive' meaning wherein the subject is conflated with the Agent, the first ngp Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, and the second pgp Complement is conflated with the Attribute.

In example (36), the Main verb نطرة (naṭraḥa) (put-we) has a metaphorical meaning in that the sense associated with this Process reflects neither 'locational' nor 'directional' meaning. Rather, it is interpreted as a 'mental communication' Process whose sense is like that of نسال (nas'ala) (ask-we), which inherently predicts three PRs. As Figure 7.36 illustrates, the Subject is conflated with the Agent because it is the causer that causes someone to know something. The first Complement, which is a pgp على أنفسنا ('lā anfusi-nā) (to ourselves), is semantically conflated with the Affected-Cognizant while the second Complement which is filled by a ngp هذه التساؤلات (hādhihi al-tasā'ūlāti) (these questions) is conflated with the Phenomenon. A wide variety of Processes come under the umbrella of three-role Processes, of which Complements are filled by other units rather than ngps.

7.2.4.4 أفعال التحويل (Afʿālu al-taḥwīl) (Verbs of causing change) as three-role Processes

As stated earlier in Section 7.2.4.1, MSA has seven verbs of افعال التحويل (afʻālu altaḥwīl) (verbs of causing change): صيّر (ṣayyara) (make), جعل (jaʻala) (make), تنك (taraka) (make), تنك (itakhadha/takhadha) (take as), (radda) (turn into), and وهب (wahaba) (make). These verbs 'are also traditionally construed as three-role Processes with two Complements as they enter a Subject-and-Predicate clause in the nominative case, turning the first ngp into their first Complement and the second ngp into their second Complement. The CG considers these verbs as three-role Processes except for the verb

'make' because it has two different senses associated with it. The first sense is related to the 'relational attributive' type in which someone or something causes someone or something to acquire a quality or attribute, as examples (37) and (38) below demonstrate. Thus, the verb here is regarded as a three-role Process with two Complements. The second sense falls in the 'influential' type of Process in which a Process influences another Process. It is influential because "it affects our interpretation of the other process in the dependent event" (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 120). According to the CG, this type of verb 'make' is construed as a two-role Process with one Complement filled by a partial clause or an event noun.

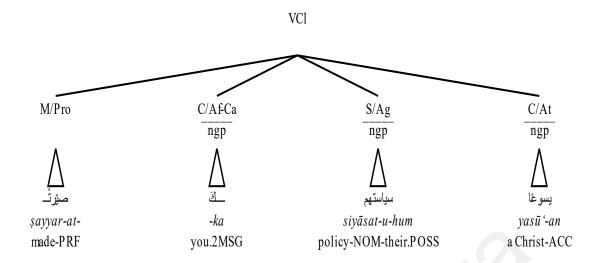
However, the current study analyses the verb 'make' as a three-role Process in both senses, i.e., when it expresses 'relational' and 'influential' meanings. Let us first consider examples (37) and (38) in which the verb صغر (ṣayyara) (make) expresses a 'relational' meaning.

صيرتُكَ سياستهم يسوعًا (37)

şayyar-at-kasiyāsat-u-humyasūʻ-anmade-PRF-you.2MSG.OBJpolicy-NOM-their.POSS.SBJa Christ-ACC'Their policy has made you a Christ.'(VCl: Arti 4)

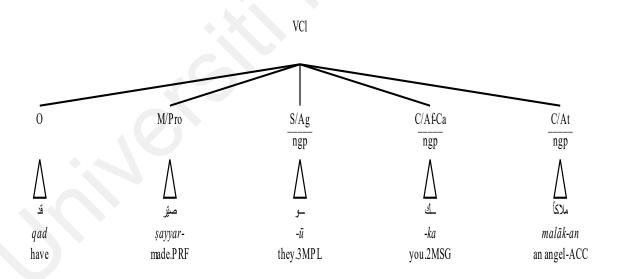
قد صيروك ملاكاً (38)

qad şayyar-ū-ka malāk-an have made.PRF-they.3MPL.SBJ-you.2MSG.OBJ an angel-ACC 'They have made you an angel.' (VCl: Arti 4)



Their policy has made you a Christ.

Figure 7.37: Functional analysis of the verb 'make' as a three-role 'relational attributive' Process



They have made you an angel.

Figure 7.38: Another functional analysis of 'make' as a 'relational attributive' Process with two Complements

The Main verb صيّر (şayyara) (made) in examples (37) and (38) is regarded as a verb that governs two Complements as it falls in the 'relational attributive' type. The sense associated with this Process indicates that something or someone has caused someone or something to acquire some quality. Therefore, it is analyzed as a three-role Process whose Subject is conflated with the Agent; the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier while the second Complement is conflated with the Attribute. In example (37), as shown in Figure 7.37, the Subject comes in the form of a ngp سياستهم (siyāsatu-hum) (their policy). Yet, the first Complement precedes the Subject because it occurs as a suffixed personal pronoun attached to the verb (-ka) (you). So, the clause has the word order of $[M + C_1 + S + C_2)]$. Whilst the first Complement is an attached personal pronoun d (ka) (you), the second Complement is filled by a ngp يسوعًا (yasū'an) (a Christ). صير Furthermore, the verbal clause in example (38) consists of [the Main Process (sayyara) (made) + the suffixed morpheme \mathbf{y} (- \mathbf{u}) (they) the Subject + the suffixed morpheme طرحاً (-ka) (you) the first Complement+ the ngp ملاكاً (malākan) (an angel) the second Complement]. As Figure 7.38 shows, the Subject is semantically conflated with the Agent, the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, while the last Complement is conflated with the Attribute.

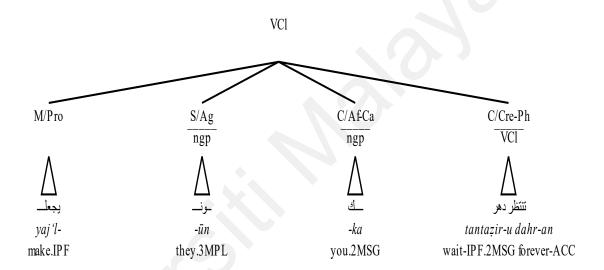
On the other hand, the other sense of the verb (ja'ala) (make) is associated with causation in the 'influential' Process type. It is viewed as the Process that influences another Process existing in the bound embedded clause. According to the CG, it has one Complement that is filled by an embedded partial clause. Figures 7.39 and 7.40 below show the proposed analysis of the verb (ja'ala) (make) when it has an influential meaning.

يجعلونك تنتظر دهراً (39)

yaj 'l-ūna-ka tantaẓir-u dahr-an make.IPF-they.3MPL.SBJ-you.2MSG.OBJ wait.IPF.2MSG forever-ACC 'They make you wait forever.' (VCl: Arti 4)

جعل الله الانسان يفكر.... (40)

ja'al-a Allāh-u al-insān-a yufakir-u made-PRF Allah-NOM the-man-ACC think-IPF.3MSG 'Allah made the man think.' (VCl: Arti 1)



They make you wait forever.

Figure 7.39: Functional analysis of the verb 'make' as a three-role 'influential' Process

the man-ACC

think-IPF.3MSG

Allah made the man think.

Allah-NOM

made-PRF

Figure 7.40: Functional analysis of 'make' as a three-role 'influential' Process with two Complements

The sense conveyed by the verb (ja'ala) (make) in examples (39) and (40) is that of causation because the Main verb (ja'ala) (make) in the matrix clause influences the happening of the verb in the embedded clause that fills the position of the Complement. Therefore, the CG considers this verb a two-role Process predicting two PRs, one of which is the Agent and the second is the Phenomenon or Created-Phenomenon. However, the analysis demonstrated by Figures 7.39 and 7.40 goes against the CG analysis that views it as two-role Processes with one Complements; instead, the verb (ja'ala) (make) is construed here as an 'influential' Process but with two Complements. Therefore, it is proposed to conflate the first Complement with the semantic role of the Affected-Carrier because it passes the Affected and Carrier tests. The Subject of the matrix clause in example (39) is an attached morpheme realized overtly as $-(-\bar{u})$ (they), the first Complement is another attached morpheme realized overtly as $-(-\bar{u})$ (they), and the second Complement is the embedded verbal clause $-(-\bar{u})$ (you), and the second Complement is the embedded verbal clause $-(-\bar{u})$ (you), and the second Complement is the Embedded verbal clause $-(-\bar{u})$ (you), and the second Complement is the Subject is conflated with

Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, while the second Complement is conflated with the Created-Phenomenon. In the same vein, in example (40) the Subject and the first Complement are ngps, الأنسان (Allāhu) (Allah) and الأنسان (al-insāna) (the man), respectively. The second Complement is the embedded verbal clause made of the verb يفكر (yufakiru) (think) and the covert third masculine singular Subject assumed as (hūwa) (he). Similarly, the Subject is experientially conflated with the Agent, the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Carrier, and the second Complement is conflated with the Created-Phenomenon.

The proposal to make the element filling the first Complement conflated with the Affected-Carrier PR stems from the fact that this element passes the tests for both Affected and Carrier. Besides, the 'influential' Process 'ja' (ja'ala) (make) is claimed to be a special 'influential' verb that exercises complete control on the other verb, so the embedded verbal clause filling the position of the second Complement cannot be partial, i.e., nominal group (nominalization), as the case with the embedded verbal clauses influenced by some other 'influential Processes. To put it differently, unlike the other 'influential' Processes, such as (yasmahu) (let), (yasmahu) (succeed), and (yafshalu) (fail), the verb (ja'ala) (make) is always followed by a finite clause that cannot be introduced by 'j (an) (that). MSA is a pro-language that allows for the null or covert Subject, making the influenced embedded verbal clause able to make a complete meaning if it stands on its own. On the other hand, the other 'influential' Processes could be followed by an incongruent event in the form of a prepositional group, as in example (41) shown by Figure 7.41, or by a non-finite clause introduced by 'j' (an) (that), as in example (42) shown by Figure 7.42.

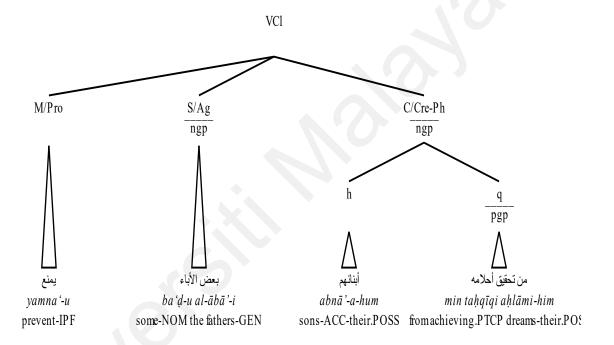
يمنع بعض الأباء أبنائهم من تحقيق أحلامهم (41)

yamna '-u ba 'd-u al- $\bar{a}b\bar{a}$ '-i abn \bar{a} '-a-hum prevent-IPF some-NOM the fathers-GEN sons-ACC-their.POSS min taḥq $\bar{q}i$ aḥl \bar{a} mi-him from achieving.PTCP dreams-their.POSS

'Some fathers prevent their sons from achieving their dreams.' (VCl: Arti 2)

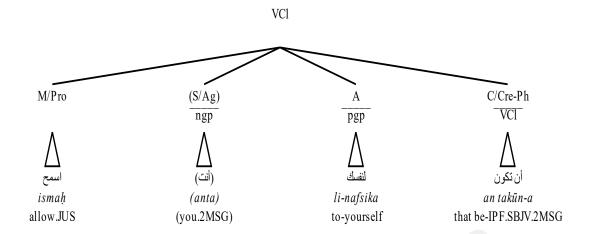
اسمح لنفسك أن تكون (42)

ismaḥ li-nafsika an takūn-a allow.JUS.2MSG to-yourself that be-IPF.SBJV.2MSG 'Allow yourself to be.' (VCl: Arti 3)



Some fathers prevent their sons from achieving their dreams.

Figure 7.41: Functional analysis of an 'influential' Process with a nominal event as a Complement



Allow yourself to be.

Figure 7.42: Functional analysis of an 'influential' Process with a non-finite verbal clause as the Complement

Examples (41) and (42) include 'influential' Processes that realize different meanings. The Main verb in example (41) is expounded by يمنغ (yamna'u) (prevent), which expresses the event of preventing someone from doing something. On the contrary, the Main verb in example (42) is in the imperative form expounded by السحح (ismah) (allow), which reflects the meaning of permitting someone to do something. Different units fill the elements that occupy the Complements in both examples. The Complement in example (41) is filled by a ngp ابنائهم (abnā'a-hum) (their sons) qualified by a prepositional group من تحقیق احلامهم (min taḥqīqi aḥlāmi-him) (from achieving their dreams), whose completive is a nominal event تحقیق (taḥqīqi) (achieving); while in example (42) it is filled by a non-finite clause made of المنافعة (an takūn-a) (to be). These different units are not allowed to fill the position of either Complement of the 'influential' Process (ja'ala) (make). This fact involves treating the Process 'make' differently from the other influential Processes in MSA. Consequently, in terms of the Transitivity

system network, the Subject in both examples is conflated with the Agent while the Complement is conflated with the Created-Phenomenon.

Even though Wei (2014) analyzed the causative Process of 'make' in modern Mandarin Chinese as a two-role Process, she disagreed with the CG in treating this causative Process in the same way as those for 'trying', 'failing', and 'allowing'. However, the proposal here to treat (ja'ala) (make) as a three-role Process is based on not only the sense associated with it but also the syntactic constraints it imposes on the elements of the clause in which it occurs. However, 'influential' Processes need further research to classify them and provide an account for their functional analysis.

7.2.4.5 Overtly unrealized Participant Roles in three-role Processes

Three-role Processes are the most common type of Processes to have a covert PR (Fawcett, 2012b, forthcoming c). Therefore, this covert PR must be syntactically realized when doing the initial functional analysis of the clause. As stated earlier, the recoverable or less important Complement is the element that tends to be syntactically and overtly unrealized. In contrast, the other Complement tends to be overt as its deletion probably causes the clause to be semantically incomplete. Let us consider the covert Complement in examples (43) and (44).

لهذا السبب، بعث الله الأنبياء والرسل (43)

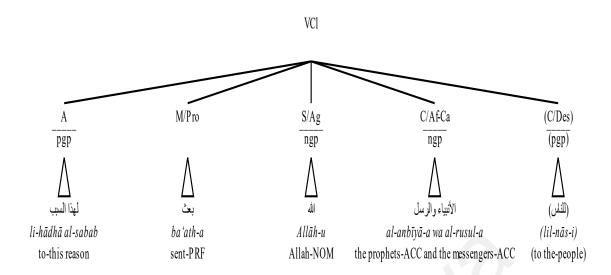
li-hādhā al-sabab ba'ath-a Allāh-u al-anbīyā-a to-this the reason sent-PRF Allah-NOM the prophets-ACC wa al-rusul-a and the messengers-ACC

'For this reason, Allah sent the prophets and the messengers.

(VCl: Edit 1)

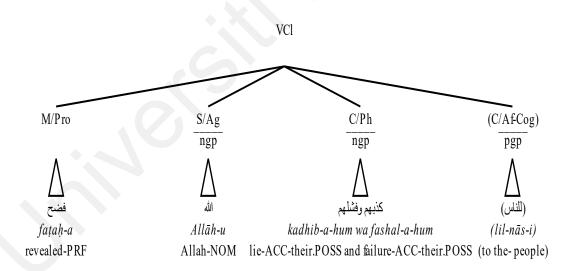
فضح الله كذبهم وفشلهم (44)

faṭaḥ-a Allāh-u kadhib-a-hum wa fashal-a-hum revealed-PRF Allah-NOM lie-ACC-their.POSS and failure-ACC-their-POSS Allah revealed their lie and failure. (VCl: Edit 2)



For this reason, Allah sent the prophets and the messengers.

Figure 7.43: Functional analysis of a three-role 'relational directional' Process whose second Complement is covert



Allah revealed their lie and failure.

Figure 7.44: Functional analysis of a 'mental communication' Process whose first Complement is covert

Figures 7.43 and 7.44 demonstrate the functional syntax of examples (43) and (44) where two Complements of different semantic roles filled by the same pgp الناس (lil-nāsi) (to the people) are overtly unrealized. Their covertness is illustrated by being placed between brackets. The clause in example (43) expresses a 'relational directional' meaning of three PRs that include a third agent. The Subject which is syntactically filled by a ngp (Allāhu) (Allah) is semantically conflated with the Agent; the first Complement which is filled by the ngp الأنبياء والرسل (al-anbīyā' wa al-rusula) (the prophets and messengers) is conflated with the compound PR Affected-Carrier; the second Complement is overtly unrealized in the surface structure of the clause. By reading the previous discourse, it is assumed as a ngp, such as الناس (lil-nāsi) (to the people), which is semantically conflated with the Destination. The clause in example (44) expresses a 'mental communication' meaning represented by the Main verb فضع (fataha) (revealed). In the same way, the clause consists of three PRs, but the covert Complement is not the second Complement but the first one, which is the compound PR. The Subject (Allāhu) (Allah) is experientially conflated with the Agent; the first Complement that is being told the information is covert. Thus, it is assumed as the ngp الناس (lil-nāsi) (to the people), which is conflated with Affected-Cognizant. The second Complement, which is the ngp (kadhiba-hum wa fashala-hum) (their lies and failure), is conflated with the Phenomenon as the information that is revealed. As mentioned above, the deletion of the Complements is attributed to several reasons, one of which is that they are recoverable from the previous discourse. Both covert Complements can be inferred from the contexts because readers can understand and extract that sending prophets and messengers is always to and for people, and so is the act of revealing something.

In brief, three-role Processes do exist in MSA in various structural patterns. The PRs conflated with the Complements could be filled by ngps or any other units, such as pgps, qlgps, non-finite clauses, event nouns, and finite clauses that occur after the verb 'make'.

In addition, either Complement can be overtly unrealized in the surface structure of the clause; however, it must be assumed while doing the functional analysis.

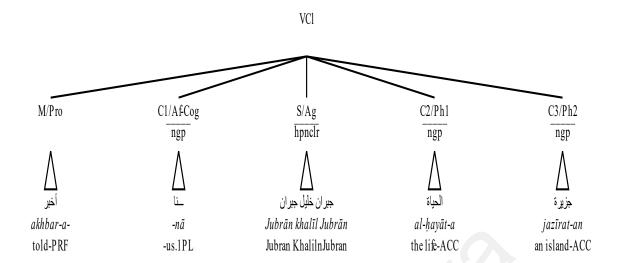
7.2.5 Four-Role Processes

Verbs that govern three Complements are traditionally known as tri-transitive verbs (Owens, 1988, p. 168). According to the CG account in categorizing Process types, there are no four-role Processes in the English language. Nevertheless, Arabic syntax is characterized by having Processes that predict four PRs: one is syntactically conflated with the Subject, and the other three PRs are syntactically conflated with the Complements (Ibn al-Sarrāj 1996, pp. 187-190). There are seven verbs of this type: أعلم (a 'lama /arā / anba 'a / nabba 'a / akhbara / khabbara / haddatha), أرى اأنبأ الخبر اخبر احدّث which are all translated as (tell/inform). These verbs are also construed as causative because their meanings are derived from their basic triliteral verb roots as 'to cause someone to know something'. The four-rule Processes come into being in two ways: a) when the middle consonant is duplicated in the verbs, such as خَبْر/حَدَث (khbbara and haddatha) (inform), or b) when همزة التعدي (hamzat al-ta 'adī) (transitivity hamza or morpheme 'a-') is prefixed to the three-role Processes, such as أرى/أنباً/أخبر (a'lama, arā, anba'a, akhbara) (tell/inform). Generally, if this همزة (hamzah) (transitivity morpheme) is prefixed to any verb, it makes the verb causative and brings about a change in the inherent number of the Complements governed by that verb (Ryding, 2005). For example, the verb خرج (kharaja) (go out) is intransitive (one-role Process), but it turns into a causative transitive verb (two-role Process) when a^- is prefixed to it — أخرج (akhraja) (made something or someone go out). Therefore, when it is prefixed to a onerole Process, it turns it into a two-role Process, and when it is prefixed to a two-role Process, it turns it into a three-role Process, and so does it turn a three-role Process into a four-role Process.

However, while the CG model offers account for a maximum three-role Process, the argument offered here proposes the existence of four-role Processes in MSA, i.e., the verbs with three Complements. That is because the verbs that are supposed to have three Complements are semantically restricted to those of the 'mental cognition' Process types when they are attached to همزة التعدي (hamzat al-ta 'adī) (transitivity hamza). In Section 7.2.4.2, the study analyzes 'mental cognition' Processes as three-role Processes. As a result, when the transitivity morpheme is prefixed to these three-role 'mental cognition' verbs, they are turned into four-role 'communication' Processes (Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Ryding, 2005). The problem that arises here is again concerning the participant role that would be conflated with the third Complement. In an English clause like 'I informed him about the story', three PRs are predicted by the 'communication' Process 'inform'. The Subject/Agent (information giver) + the Main verb/Process + the first Complement/Affected-Cognizant (the information receiver) + the second Complement/Phenomenon (the information). Nevertheless, in MSA there must be a third Complement. Let us consider example (45), which has been modified to illustrate the functional syntax of a four-role Process.

أخبرنا جبران خليل جبران الحياة جزيرة (45)

akhbar-a-nāJubrānkhalīlJubrānal-ḥayāt-ajazīrat-antold-PRF-us.1PL.OBJJubranKhalilJubran.SBJthe-life-ACCan island-ACC'JubranKhalilJubran told us life is an island.'(VCl: Edit1)



Jubran Khalil Jubran told us life is an island.

Figure 7.45: Functional analysis of a four-role 'mental communication' Process

As Figure 7.45 demonstrates, there are four PRs the first of which is the Subject that is syntactically realized by the human proper name cluster (hpnclr) جبران خلیل جبران (Jubrān khalīl Jubrān) (Jubran Khalil Jubran); the Main verb is expounded by the Process (akhbara-) (informed/told); the first compound Complement is realized by the suffixed object pronoun (-nā) (we); the second Complement is a ngp الحياة (al-ḥayāta) (the life); the last third Complement is also a ngp جزيرة (jazīratan) (an island). Experientially, the Subject is conflated with the Agent, the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Cognizant, the second Complement is conflated with Phenomenon 1, and so is the third Complement conflated with Phenomenon 2. The reason to have two phenomena is that they are both in the accusative case functioning as the Complements of the Main verb. Besides, it is not possible to delete one of these three Complements as they are all connected as direct Complements of the Main verb.

These four-role Processes resemble the analysis of the three-role Processes of 'mental cognition' when the second Complement is introduced by the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}^{j}$ (anna) (that). To put it differently, if these verbs are followed by $\dot{\mathcal{U}}^{j}$ (anna) (that), they also confine themselves to govern two Complements, one of which is conflated with the compound PR of the Affected-Cognizant, while the second Complement is conflated with that of the Phenomenon. So, this analysis is identical to that of the CG. The Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}^{j}$ (anna) (that) and the two following elements, known as its Subject and Complement, can substitute the positions of both Complements. This Binder turns the elements it introduces into a single projected unit. Example (46) below is a modified form of example (45).

أخبرنا جبران خليل جبران أنّ الحياة جزيرة (46)

akhbar-a-nā Jubrān khalīl Jubrān anna told-PRF-us.1PL.OBJ Jubran Khalil Jubran.SBJ that

al-ḥayāt-a jazīrat-un the-life-ACC an island-NOM

'Jubran Khalil Jubran told us that life is an island.'

Jubran Khalil Jubran told us that life is an island.

Jubran Khalil Jubran

-us.1PL

told-PRF

Figure 7.46: Functional analysis of three-role 'mental communication' Process when followed by $\dot{\psi}$ (anna) (that)

that

the life-ACC

an island-NOM

As shown in Figure 7.46, the Process is syntactically realized by the Main verb أخبر (akhbara) (inform/told). It expresses a 'mental communication' meaning in which there are three PRs. Therefore, the Subject, which is overtly filled by the hpncl جبران خلیل جبران (Jubrān khalīl Jubrān) (Jubran Khalil Jubran), is conflated with the Agent. The first Complement that is conflated with the Affected-Cognizant is realized by the object personal pronoun نا (-nā) (us) attached to the verb. The second Complement conflated with the Phenomenon is filled by a non-finite embedded clause made of [Binder أن (anna) جزيرة (jazīratun) (an island)]. The clause thus has the structural order [M + C1 + S + C2].

To recapitulate, the study agrees with the CG that the function of a given element is determined by its semantic relationship with other elements in the clause, yet discritical marks or case endings appearing at the end of elements play a significant role in determining that element function in MSA. It is not possible to ignore the case endings of the clause elements, especially when matching the semantic features with the syntactic ones because the case endings in MSA serve as a strong indicator of the functions of these elements (Abu-Mansour, 1986). Besides, it seems that the four-role 'communication' Processes are not used as frequently as the three-role 'communication' Processes wherein the Complement is introduced by the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that). Consequently, the analysis of these 'communication' Processes when including the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that) is the same as that provided by the CG model. However, proposing two alternative analyses to account for the functional syntax of four-role Processes is necessary as either structure might be used in different contexts.

7.3 Conclusion

This chapter has discussed the results obtained to answer the last third question related to identifying the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple verbal clause in MSA. The focus has been on matching the syntactic properties at the level of form with the semantic features of the Transitivity system networks at the level of meaning. The exploration has started with giving a general overview of the simple verbal clause as a reminder of its salient characteristics. Then, to match the syntax of the simple verbal clause with its semantics, the verbal clause has been classified into five categories based on the number of the PRs predicted by Processes in MSA: namely zero-role Processes, one-role Processes, two-role Processes, three-role Processes, and four role Processes.

In discussing zero-role Processes, it has been proposed that MSA does not have zero-role Processes, which are experientially realized by 'environmental' Processes in English.

The analysis has shown that zero-role Processes are construed as 'material action' Processes with either one PR conflated with the Affected or two PRs, one of which is

conflated with the Agent and the second PR is conflated with the Affected. In the first account, the natural phenomenon has been viewed as only happening. In contrast, it has been construed as doing in the second account where a natural force causes a physical change to something in the surrounding.

By considering one-role Processes with the functional analysis of different examples, it has been proposed that MSA resembles English in structuring Transitivity and ergativity. The results have revealed that one-role Processes occur in 'material action' Processes in four different types: 'Agent only' Processes, 'Affected only' Processes, 'Carrier only' Processes, and 'Created only' Processes. They can also come in 'influential' Processes with the Subject being conflated with the Phenomenon. It has been claimed that one-role Processes whose PR is conflated with the Subject might occur as two-role Processes with a Complement if the senses of these Processes extend to another element in certain contexts. Besides, the results have shown that in addition to the role of the context wherein a clause occurs, the inflectional morphological patterns of the verb play a fundamental role in assigning it transitive or ergative.

Furthermore, the Processes that inherently predict two PRs are the most frequent type in MSA. The Complements, in general, could be filled by a ngp, a bound suffixed morpheme, a pgp, a qlgp, a partial clause of nominalization, and a non-finite clause. MSA also is characterized by having overtly unrealized Complements. Such covert Complements are deleted from the linear surface of the clause because they are recoverable or less significant concerning the idea expressed.

Concerning three-role Processes, applying the CG model to the 'mental cognition' Processes in MSA has resulted in two alternative analyses. While 'mental cognition' Processes in English are considered two-role Processes, they are analyzed as three-role Processes with two Complements in MSA if they are not followed by the Binder \dot{b} (anna)

(that). As a result, the compound PR of Affected-Carrier has been proposed to be conflated with the first Complement. On the other hand, they are analyzed as two-role Processes if the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that) occurs after them. That is because the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (anna) (that) turns the elements it precedes into one single embedded unit that functions as the Complement of the clause. Besides, the study has maintained the traditional account that views the Process $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (ja'ala) (make) as a three-role Process when it expresses 'relational attributive' and 'influential' meanings. The reason to adopt such an analysis is that the verb $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (ja'ala) (make) and its equivalents in MSA impose structural constraints on the elements that function as its Complements. That is, unlike other 'influential' Processes, its Complements cannot be filled by an event noun (nominalization) or introduced by the Binder $\dot{\mathcal{U}}$ (an) (that). In addition to that, the study has shown the importance of words' case endings in marking the functions of the clause elements.

Regarding four-role Processes, the new proposal that 'cognition' Processes in MSA could be analyzed as three-role Processes has led to two alternative accounts concerning four-role Processes, a category of verbs governing three Complements in MSA. Although these Processes express 'communication' as they are synonymous with the three-role Processes of 'tell' and 'inform', they have two ways of analysis. In the first analysis, they are four-role Processes: the Subject is conflated with the Agent, the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Cognizant, the second Complement is conflated with Phenomenon 1, and the last Complement is conflated with Phenomenon 2. But suppose the second Complement of these four-role Processes is introduced by the Binder & (anna) (that). In that case, they are analyzed as three-role Processes because this Binder exercises structural constraints on the clause in which it is inserted. The Subject is conflated with the Agent, the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Cognizant, while the second Complement is conflated with the Phenomenon.

CHAPTER 8: CONCLUSION

8.1 Introduction

This chapter briefly summarizes the overall findings of the current study considering the three research questions in light of the Cardiff Grammar approach. It then concludes with the study contributions, implications, and proposed directions for further research.

8.2 Research Major Findings

With the main aim of investigating the simple clause in Modern Standard Arabic in light of the CG, the study has explored both types of simple clauses: the simple nominal clause and the simple verbal clause. Therefore, the syntactic properties of the simple nominal and verbal clauses have been identified and matched with their semantic features of the Transitivity system network, which divides the clause into a Participant Role and Process. Therefore, authentic data has been collected from ten daily written newspapers published in five Arabic-speaking countries. Based on the CG Systemic Functional model, the tree diagram has been utilized to elucidate each extracted clause syntax and match it with its semantics. The analysis and classification of the collected data have resulted in the functional description of (218) clauses (140 were verbal, and 78 were nominal), (81) of which have been selected and transferred to the software program for the final functional analysis to address the research questions of the current study.

Since the study mainly aims to provide the syntactic and semantic description of both types of the simple clause, three questions have been proposed, the first two of which are concerning the simple nominal clause properties, while the last question examines the simple verbal clause properties. Thus, the major findings of each question are briefly presented in separate sections below.

8.2.1 The First Research Question

The first research question is concerned with identifying the semantic and syntactic properties of the simple nominal clause in MSA. To address this question, nominal clauses have been classified into three categories according their Predicate/Complement structure. That is because the structure of the Complement is the key to determining the experiential functions associated with the nominal clause elements, especially those clause elements juxtaposed without an overt verb. The term Subject has been used to refer to the essential initial element known as مبتدأ (mubtada'), and the terms Predicate and Complement have been used interchangeably to describe the second essential element خبر (khabar).

8.2.1.1 The simple nominal clause with a single-item Complement

The first category of simple nominal clauses is the simplest type, where the Complement is a single item, such as pronouns, common nouns, proper nouns, numerals, adjectives, demonstratives, participles, and circumstantials. It has been found out that when the Complement is a single item, the simple nominal clause usually expresses a 'relational attributive' meaning wherein the Subject is experientially conflated with the Carrier, while the Complement is conflated with the Attribute. To put it another way, when the Complement comes in the structural form of one single item, it is functionally labeled the Attribute since it specifies a certain quality the Subject has or asserts that it belongs to a specific class of objects, which accords with Bardi (2008) and Al-Hindawi and Al-Ebadi (2016).

8.2.1.2 The simple nominal clause with a phrasal Complement

The second category involves the simple nominal clause whose Complement occurs as phrasal, such as noun group, quality group, quantity group, and prepositional group. The study has shown that while the simple nominal clause maintains its experiential

meaning as a 'relational' clause when the Complement is phrasal, it extends to express other types of 'relational' meanings besides 'attributive', for instance, 'locational', 'directional', and 'possessive'. Therefore, the Subject is semantically conflated with the Carrier as the first PR, whereas the Complement is usually conflated with Location if the clause is 'locational'; Possessed' if it expresses a 'possessive' meaning; 'Destination/Source/Path if it is 'directional'. Besides, in case of simple nominal clauses that express a 'directional' meaning, the prepositional group expressing the directional meaning occurs as a qualifier of the Complement. Since the clause is devoid of a Process in its underlying structure, the directional meaning is realized in the Complement, which comes in the form of a nominalized verb (nominal group or event noun in the CG), namely active participles. The presence of this prepositional group as a qualifier is necessary to express the directional semantic role associated with the Complement, whether it is Destination, Source, or Path. Examples of active participles that have directional meanings are ناهب إلى (dhāhibun to) (going to), سائرإلى (sā'irun to) (walking to) قالم من (qādimun from) (coming from), عائد من ('ā'idun min) (coming back from), etc. The second PR is also directly conflated with the Complement because the preposition is a part of the direction, and there are always various choices of different prepositions to be made within the PR (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 35)

Examining the syntactic structure of simple nominal clauses with phrasal Complements has revealed that both elements of Subject and Predicate can be noun group complex by being post-modified or pre-modified to other groups. Furthermore, while it is common for the Complement to occur as a clause, the Subject could rarely occur as a verbal clause when it is made of [the accusative particle أن (an) (that) + Main verb in the subjunctive mode + Subject] (Abu-Mansour, 1986). This verbal clause functions as the Subject of the nominal clause because it occurs clause-initially, and its structure can be substituted by المصدر الموؤل (al-maṣdar al-mu'wal) (the inferred gerund). This inferred

gerund is a nominalized verb that can replace the initial verbal clause made of [ii] (an) (that)+ verb + Subject]. However, such verbal clausal Subjects in nominal clauses are not frequent compared to the clausal Complement, which frequently occurs in simple nominal clauses.

8.2.1.3 The simple nominal clause with a clausal Complement

The last third category in discussing the syntactic and semantic features of the simple nominal clause is those nominal clauses whose Complement comes in the form of a clause. Since MSA is characterized by having two types of clauses, i.e., nominal and verbal, Complements could also be filled by either nominal or verbal clauses. For the simple nominal clause whose embedded Complement is filled by a nominal clause, the functional analysis has shown that such clauses tend to express a 'relational attributive' meaning. The clause has two Subjects and two Complements because there are two clauses: the matrix clause and the embedded clause. The first element is syntactically analyzed as the Subject of the matrix clause, while its Complement is filled by another embedded nominal clause made of a second Subject plus its Complement. Experientially, the Subject is conflated with the Carrier, while its embedded nominal clausal Complement is conflated with the Attribute. The same analysis has been found when the embedded nominal clausal Complement is initially introduced by إنّ وأخواتها (inna wa akhawātuhā) (inna and its sisters). Significantly, the Subject in the matrix clause is grammatically associated with its clausal Predicate by a resumptive anaphoric pronoun attached to the second Subject in the embedded clause. The existence of this anaphoric pronoun in the clausal Complement is essential as it relates the Subject to its nominal clausal Complement, which is in line with what previous studies have come up with (Abdul-Raof, 1998; Abu-Mansour, 1986; Abunowara, 1996; Bardi, 2008)

On the other hand, the functional analysis is different when it comes to simple nominal clauses whose embedded Predicate is filled by a verbal clause. The reason lies in the existence of a verb in the verbal clausal Complement of the matrix nominal clause. The study has followed the traditional Arabic norms considering this clause type as nominal. The results have found that the meaning expressed by these clauses varies according to the verb that exists in the embedded verbal clause functioning as the Predicate (Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008). Specifically, when the Process in the embedded verbal clausal Complement is two-role (one Complement only), the PR is directly conflated with the verbal clausal Complement, even if the second element is not overtly realized in the clause surface structure. However, when the Process in the embedded verbal clausal Complement is a three-role Process (two Complements), the PRs associated with the embedded verbal Complement are not directly conflated with it. The reason is that confusion is created when deciding which PR should be selected to conflate it with the verbal Complement when the Process in the embedded verbal Predicate has two Complements, especially if both are overtly present. The findings have found it more logical not to conflate any of the PRs with the clausal Complement. Like the embedded nominal clausal Complement, a resumptive anaphoric pronoun must occur in the verbal clausal Complement to link it with its Subject. The resumptive anaphoric pronoun refers to the Subject that occupies the first clause slot.

8.2.2 The Second Research Question

The second research question has intended to examine a linguistic phenomenon that characterizes the simple nominal verbless clause known as reversibility. This question deals with investigating how the elements are syntactically and semantically described when they are placed in their unusual positions. It is common in MSA that reversibility is mainly associated with definiteness, which is hierarchically ordered. When the Subject and Predicate are both definite, the element that expresses a higher degree of definiteness

is prioritized to be initially placed in the clause. However, the less definite Complement can occupy the Subject's position. The findings have shown that the Subject and Complement are optionally reversed when they are both definite and referential with a different degree of definiteness. In this case, the reversed elements retain neither their syntactic functions nor their semantic features of Transitivity. But the reversed elements retain their syntactic and semantic features despite being permuted when the Subject is a definite item coming as a personal pronoun or when a pgp fills the Complement. The choice to thematize the Predicate by placing it at an early position in the clause does not influence both elements' syntactic and semantic properties, and reversibility is used as a device to achieve pragmatically communicative purposes. On the other hand, the findings have indicated that when the Subject is indefinite, both elements are obligatorily reversed not only to fulfill the syntactic constraints that require the initial Subject to be definite but also to achieve pragmatic purposes. The syntactic constraints stem from the ungrammaticality of the occurrence of the Subject clause-initially when its definiteness characteristic is violated. The pragmatic constraints spring from that the pre-posed Complement is thematized because it has been mentioned earlier in the previous discourse. Therefore, the pre-posed Complement is marked as 'Given Information', making the Subject of the clause 'New Information'. In both types of reversibility, the Subject and Complement tend to retain their syntactic and semantic features even though they occur in their unusual positions. Retaining the syntactic functions of the essential elements of Subjects and Predicates in most cases of reversibility leads to confirming what Fawcett has proposed in the unnecessity of the distinction made between 'identifying' and 'attributive' clauses.

In alignment with reversibility, the analysis could not go further without undertaking the functional analysis of ضمير الغماد (ḍamīr al-faṣl) (separation pronoun) or ضمير العماد (ḍamīr al-'imād) (base pronoun), which is used in nominal verbless clauses when both

Subject and Complement are equally definite (Al-Balushi, 2012; Al-Horais, 2006; Alazzawie, 2016; Alotaibi, 2019; Choueiri, 2016; Eid, 1983). First, the study has argued against the two traditional analyses which view this pronoun as a redundant pronoun or as a second Subject in the embedded clause that fills the Complement of the first Subject. Alternatively, the functional analysis provided here has considered this pronoun as the Subject Extension (SEx) based on three main reasons. First, both traditional accounts have been found incompatible as they regard it optional, on the one hand, and as an essential second Subject on the other hand. Second, this pronoun co-refers anaphorically with the preceding Subject, so analyzing it as a SEx accounts for its occurrence as a thirdperson subject pronoun. Third, analyzing this pronoun as SEx allows the optional and obligatory insertion of this pronoun without causing any problematic complications, as this pronoun is inserted to achieve emphatic and disambiguating functions (Eid, 1983, 1991; Peled, 2009). This novel account conforms to the notion of Choueiri (2016); Peled (2009) that prioritizes the function of this pronoun over its form, even though we disagree with the analysis of this pronoun as a pronominal copular as suggested by previous studies (Al-Balushi, 2012; Alazzawie, 2016; Bakir, 1979; Choueiri, 2016; Eid, 1983)

8.2.3 The Third Research Question

The last third question is meant to identify the syntactic and semantic properties of the simple verbal clause. By employing the Participant Role concept in the CG, the analysis has been organized according to the number of PRs predicted by the Processes in MSA syntax. Thus, the simple verbal clause has been categorized into five types: zero-role Processes, one-role Processes, two-role Processes, three-role Processes, and four-role Processes.

8.2.3.1 Zero-Role Processes

For zero-role Processes, the findings have revealed that this type of Process does not exist in MSA. This Process type occurs in 'environmental' Processes in English with an empty subject. The analysis has indicated that MSA consists of Processes that denote environmental meanings, such as تمطر (tumṭiru) (rain), تثلج (tuthliju) (snow), ترعد (tar 'idu) (tahubu) (blow), etc. But these environmental' Processes occur as 'material') (tahubu) (blow), etc. But these environmental' Processes occur as 'material action' of either happening with one PR or doing with two PRs. This finding has confirmed previous research findings by (Bardi, 2008; Cantarino, 1974). The first type that expresses happening indicates that the natural phenomenon just happens, so the expected PR is conflated with Affected as it does not affect another element or identity. The second meaning of 'environmental' Processes as 'material action' involves doing because two PRs are predicted by Processes. The first PR is the natural force or phenomenon conflated with the Agent, whereas the second PR is the Affected conflated with the Complement. The natural force is construed as the causer, which brings about a visible physical change in the state of the surroundings. Therefore, Processes that express 'environmental' meanings in Arabic are part of the 'material action' Processes with either one PR conflated with the Affected or two PRs conflated with Agent and Affected.

8.2.3.2 One-Role Processes

The intransitive types of verbs are referred to as one-role Processes because they predict one Participant Role that is syntactically conflated with the Subject. Concerning these inherently one-role Processes, the findings have indicated that MSA has Processes that also predict one PR conflated with the Subject whose semantic role varies following the meaning the Processes express. There are two types of one-role Processes: 'influential' Processes and 'material action' Processes. In 'influential' Processes, the Subject is conflated with the Phenomenon. The examples of these influential Processes are typically the Processes of continuing, such as استعر (istamarat) (continued), or

ceasing, as انتهى (intaha) (ended). In case of 'material action' one-role Processes, the study has revealed that MSA also includes the four sub-categories known as 'Agent only' Processes, 'Affected only' Processes, 'Carrier only' Processes, and 'Created only' Processes. These sub-categories involve that things just happen or come into being. In 'Agent-only' Processes, such as تجري (tajrī) (run-she) and يتحدث (yataḥadath) (speak-he), the Subject is experientially conflated with the Agent as it causes the event to happen. In 'Affected-only' Processes, the Subject is conflated with the Affected to indicate that things just happen. Such inherently 'Affected-only' Processes are like رحل (raḥala) (passed away-he), نموت (namūtu) (die-we), and أفلت (afalat) (set-she). In 'Created-only' Processes, such as نشأت (nasha'at) (came into being-she), the Subject is semantically conflated with the Created to show that a certain thing comes into being regardless of the causer that leads to its creation. In case of inherently 'Carrier-only' Processes, the findings have shown that MSA has one-role Processes whose Subject is conflated with the Carrier. These Processes are falling within the 'material action' Processes whose meaning expresses emission, such as سطع (saṭa 'a) (shined-he), لمع (lama 'a) (glitteredhe), etc. They also include voluntary behaviors of emotions, such as ضعك (daḥaka) (laughed-he), بكى (bakā) (cried-he), قلق (qaliqa) (worried-he), etc., (Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008).

Moreover, it has been confirmed that MSA is characterized by having the ergative system, which occurs in 'material action' Processes as either one-role Affected Processes [Pro + Af] or two-role Processes [Pro + Agent + Af]. The ergativity system has been found to be an essential sub-system in the Transitivity system network, which is in line with previous findings by Bardi (2008). Deciding whether a certain Process is ergative with one PR or transitive with two PRs is achieved in Arabic by two main criteria. The first criterion is the context wherein the clause occurs, which determines if the verb's effect extends to another element, even if the second element (Complement) is overtly

unrealized in the structure of the clause. To put it another way, once the meaning associated with the Process predicts another element, the Complement must be assumed in the functional analysis as an essential inherited element. The second criterion is the morphological inflectional variations or patterns of the verb, which involve that this Process means the happening of the action without giving any priority to the causer. This ergative structure not only includes Processes associated with the 'material action' of 'change of state', but also it includes Processes that express 'relational' meanings with only one PR. That is because it is the inflectional forms of the verb that indicate whether it is ergative or not, for example, 'irities' (natashābah) (made similar we) and 'irities' (natatābaq) (made identical we), whose Subject passed the test for the Carrier.

8.2.3.3 Two-Role Processes

Roncerning the third category that inherently predicts two-role Processes, the findings have revealed that while one-role Processes occur in certain limited types of Processes, such as 'material action' and 'influential' Processes, this type almost occurs in all Process types: 'action' Processes as (khalaqa) (created-he); 'influential' Processes as (yasmaḥ-ūn) (allow-they), 'mental perception' as 'inazara) (looked at-he) and 'mental cognition' as (yafqidu) (lose-he) and 'mental cognition' as (yafqidu) (lose-he) and 'event-relating' Processes as (ya'ni) (mean-he). Like any functional analysis of any clause, the Subject and Complement must be assumed if they are not overtly realized at the level of form. The second PR predicted in two-role Processes tends to be explicitly realized in the linear surface of the clause structure unless the writer or speaker decides to make it implicit for specific pragmatic reasons. In addition, the findings have shown that the Complement can be filled by not only ngps, but also by qlgps, pgps, or bigger units as event nouns (nominalization) and non-finite clauses. The study has found out that some units which used to be traditionally analyzed as Circumstantial Role because pgps or non-finite clauses fill them are Complements in

light of the CG model. The reason is that these units are inherently predicted by the clause Process and without which the clause does not achieve a complete communicative message.

8.2.3.4 Three-Role Processes

Three-role Processes are called bi-transitive verbs on the ground that they have two Complements expected by the Processes. According to the CG, the compound participant role occurs here as a third-party agent. When it comes to the analysis of three-role Processes in MSA, a classification has been made based on the structural forms of the Complements predicted by the Processes. That is, the units that fill the Complements can occur in three different structural forms: a) two nominals, b) Subject-and-Predicate structure, and c) different syntactic units. In the first sub-category of three-role Processes, ngps fill the positions of both Complements as being inherently predicted by the Processes forming what is traditionally called indirect object and direct object. The sense associated with these Processes is that someone causes someone to have something. Such three-role Processes are found in verbs like $(a't\bar{a})$ (gave-he), $(a't\bar{a})$ (gave-he), $(a't\bar{a})$ (granted-he), $(a't\bar{a})$ (took-he), $(a't\bar{a})$ (be worn-he), etc. These verbs govern two nominal Complements giving them the accusative case, and either one could be omitted if it is recoverable in the context.

The second sub-category of three-role Processes is the set of verbs that enters a simple nominal clause of a nominative Subject and nominative Predicate, turning them into their Complements in the accusative case. While 'mental' Processes in MSA are usually of two PRs (Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Bardi, 2008), one set of Processes could predict three RPs. Traditional grammarians called this category of verbs ظن واخواتها (zanna wa akhawātu-hā) (think and its sisters) or أفعال القلوب (áfʾālu al-qulūb) (verbs of hearts), for instance, عرف/علم ('rifa/'lima) (know), عرف/علم (darā/raʾā) (come to know), and

(wajada/alfā) (find), ظن/خال/حسب (zanna/khāla/hasiba) (think), زعم (za'ma) (claimed), and $\stackrel{\text{def}}{=}$ ('dda) (consider). The Complements in this type are syntactically and semantically conjoined to each other in the same way Subject and Predicate are bound in the simple nominal clause. Although the set of verbs known as أفعال التحويل (afʻālu al-taḥwīl) (verbs of causing change) fall into this three-role Process category, they are analyzed in a different section due to the different senses they express. The study has shown that almost all these verbs come under the category of 'mental cognition' Processes since the sense associated with them generally denotes an abstract state of knowing or thinking. The study has proposed two alternative analyses to account for the functional syntax of these verbs based on the absence or presence of the Binder أَنْ (anna) (that) in the clause. The first account has considered them as three-role Processes considering the Subject-and-Predicate elements as their first and second Complements (Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Ryding, 2005). The study has based this analysis on some reasons. First, the occurrence of these elements in the accusative case asserts their function as Complements of these 'mental cognition' Processes. Second, these Complements have been found to be essential and interdependent to convey complete meaning, so the deletion of one of the Complements is not as frequent as the deletion of either nominal Complements of the first sub-category of three-role Processes. As a result, the second Complement has been labeled the semantic role of a second Phenomenon to represent its function in terms of the Transitivity system network, i.e., [M/Pro + S/Cog + C1/Ph1 + C2/Ph2]. Such an account confirms the significance of the words' case endings in determining the function of elements in MSA (Abu-Mansour, 1986; al-Sāmarrā'ī, 2007; Al-Liheibi, 1999).

The second account has viewed these Processes as two-role Processes only if followed by the Binder $\dot{\upsilon}^{\dagger}$ (anna) (that). This account, therefore, matches the CG model in analyzing 'mental cognition' Processes as two-role Processes. In this account, the Subject-and-Predicate structure is viewed as one embedded projected clausal unit that

occupies both first and second Complements. When the embedded projected clause commences with the Binder $\dot{\upsilon}^{\dagger}$ (anna) (that), these verbs confine themselves to governing only one Complement rather than two. The Binder $\dot{\upsilon}^{\dagger}$ (anna) (that) in MSA exercises a substantial effect on the elements following it by turning them into one single projected unit (Alazzawie, 1990). Moreover, these verbs behave like English verbs in predicting one Complement when their meaning is restricted to the literal and physical meaning of 'sensing' or 'perceiving', hearing, etc. Thus, they fall into the 'mental perception' type of Processes, which take one Complement conflated with the Phenomenon.

Then, the study has devoted one section to the discussion of افعال التحويل (af'ālu altaḥwīl) (verbs of causing change), such as جعل/صير (jaʻala/ṣayyara) (make), رَدِّ (raddā) (turn into), اتخذ (itakhadha) (take as). They are traditionally construed as three-role Processes because they also enter a simple nominal clause with a Subject-Predicate structure turning these elements into their first and second Complements. The CG construed it as either a three-role Process expecting two Complements when it expresses a 'relational meaning' or as a two-role Process with one Complement when it expresses an 'influential meaning'. The first sense associated with the verb 'make' is that which is related to the 'relational attributive' type in which someone or something causes someone or something to acquire a quality or attribute. The second sense is that which falls into the 'influential' type of Processes where a Process influences another Process. Nevertheless, the study has proposed two accounts concerning the verb جعل /صير (ṣayyara/ja ʻala) (make). The findings have shown the verb جعل /صيّر (ṣayyara/ja ʻala) (make) as a three-role Process when it expresses both 'relational' meaning and 'influential causative' meaning. To meet such an analysis, the study has proposed to functionally label the second Complement in the 'inflectional' type as the Affected-Carrier, as it is the compound PR. Accordingly, the Process (ja'ala) (make) has the configuration of three PRs as [M/Pro + S/Ag + C/Af-Ca + C/At] when it is 'relational, and it has the syntactic and semantic functions of [M/Pro + S/Ag + C/Af-Ca + C/Cre-Ph] when it is 'influential'. The reason to argue against the CG model that considers the 'influential' Process of جعل (ja'ala) (make) as a two role-Process is that the clause that includes this verb displays different syntactic constraints from those clauses that have other 'influential' Processes. To put it another way, the embedded verbal clause filling the position of the second Complement of the verb 'make' in MSA cannot be either a partial clause, i.e., event noun (nominalization), pgps, or introduced by the Binder نا (yasmaḥu) (that) plus its imperfective verb. The other 'influential' verbs, such as المنافعة (yasmaḥu) (yasmaḥu) (yafshalu)(fail-he), etc., allow these structural forms to fill the position of their Complement while the verb 'make does not.

The last sub-category of three-role Processes is those traditionally analyzed as two-role Processes with only one Complement because what is supposed to be their second Complement is traditionally viewed as an Adjunct. The findings have revealed that these Processes predict two Complements rather than one. While a ngp usually fills the first Complement, the second Complement is mostly filled by pgps. Such Processes are as (mayyaza) (characterized-he), عول (hawala) (turned into-he), بعث (ba'atha) (sent-he) and (nas'alu) (ask-we) and many others. The Study has thus agreed with the CG in analyzing them as three-role Processes even if these Complements are overtly unrealized in the surface structure of the clause. The basic point here is that such a pgp is essential and could not be analyzed as a CR because CR is an element that is not expected by the clause Process. Consequently, if this element is deleted, the clause's meaning is regarded as incomplete for the addressee. In addition, an CR has the potential to be placed in any slot in the clause, a feature that has not been applied to the second element filled by the pgp in the analyzed simple verbal clauses.

8.2.3.5 Four-Role Processes

Concerning four-role Processes, which govern three Complements in MSA, the study has treated these verbs as four-role Processes in one context and as three-role Processes if followed by the Binder أن (anna) (that). These verbs are restricted to those of the 'mental cognition' three-role Processes when they are prefixed to همزة التعدى (hamzat al $ta'ad\bar{\imath}$ (transitivity hamza/morpheme a-). These verbs are أعلم/أرى/أنبأ/نبّا/أخبر/خبّر/حدّث (a'lama /arā / anba'a / nabba'a / akhbara / khabbara / haddatha), which all mean (tell/inform). Providing two different accounts in analyzing the 'mental cognition' Processes, based on whether they are followed by the Binder i (anna) (that) or not, has led to proposing two accounts to explain four-role 'communication' Processes. In the first account, they have three Complements, which confirmed former research findings (Al-Hindawi & Al-Ebadi, 2016; Ryding, 2005). Therefore, the Subject is conflated with the Agent; the first Complement is conflated with the Affected-Cognizant; the second Complement is conflated with the Phenomenon 1; the third Complement is conflated with the Phenomenon 2. Therefore, the clause exhibits two phenomena because they are both in the accusative case functioning as the Complements of the Main verb. Besides, it is implausible to delete one of these three Complements as they are all connected to one another as direct essential Complements of the Main verb. In the second account, if these verbs are followed by the Binder أَنَّ (anna) (that), these verbs have been found to confine themselves to govern two Complements only, one of which is conflated with the compound PR of the Affected-Cognizant, while the second is conflated with the Phenomenon. Again here, the case endings in MSA have been proven to exercise an important effect in assigning the function of the clause elements. The study has concluded that MSA tends to develop simpler structural constructions of clauses than Classical Arabic, so four-role Processes are not used as frequently as they were used long ago in Classical Arabic.

8.3 Final Conclusion

The final conclusions that could be drawn from the findings obtained can be summarized as follows:

- 1- Concerning the CG model: The application of the CG model on the simple clause in MSA has shown it as a sound and valid version of the SFL that could be used to analyze the language components of form and meaning. While exploring the functional structure of clauses, matching both components is challenging as MSA has its inherent specialties and characteristics that make it different from English. The use of the Process test, Adjunct test, and re-expression tests for identifying the PRs (see Appendix A) has largely assisted the researcher in interpreting the experiential meaning expressed in each clause and matching it with its syntax. These tests indeed cater for the props that helped distinguish the different clause elements whose functional analysis might be mistakenly overlapping, such as the distinction between a MEx and an expected PR as a Complement or between an expected PR as the Complement and the CR as an Adjunct. However, the CG model needs to be applied more to study other linguistic issues in either MSA or other languages so that it could serve as a rich resource for the description of a wide range of languages.
- 2- Concerning simple nominal clauses: Even though NCls might seem to have an easy Subject-and-Complement/Predicate structure, applying the CG model to this clause type appears more complicated than one might expect. Since the CG is grounded in English, it is not an easy task to provide accounts on the simple nominal clause. In other words, analyzing the NCls that have one single or phrasal Complement has been smoothly carried out, as the complexity lies in exploring the functional syntax of the NCls whose Complement is a verbal embedded clause. The existence of the verb in the clausal Complement makes it challenging

to determine which semantic function to label the whole embedded clause. However, the researcher has been very keen to apply the principles and concepts of the CG without contradicting the basic norms of the MSA and simultaneously without forcing the notions of the CG as the theoretical framework onto the description of MSA.

3- Concerning simple verbal clauses: The application of the CG on verbal clauses has been found somehow more manageable than that of the NCls. The verbal clauses have sometimes shown a more one-to-one relationship between the syntactic function and the semantic roles of Transitivity. This is attributed to the presence of the Main verb and its PRs, which is nearly like that in English, even though the Subject must come after the Main verb rather than before. The study has found out that most elements suggested in the CG do exist in Arabic, reflecting almost the same meaning. Those elements found correspondent to those in English are O, M, S, C, X, and A. However, there have been some cases in which such a one-to-one relationship has lacked, and discrepancy exists between what is syntactically known in MSA and what is being attempted to be semantically matched in light of the CG. This has been the case with the analysis of the three-and four-role Processes. However, the researcher has utilized the flexibility of the CG model to come up with an alternative analysis and finally match the syntactic features with the semantic ones.

8.4 Contributions of the Study

In view of the study findings, there are two main contributions claimed to be made in relation to the scope of the study. First, the study has a theoretical contribution to the Cardiff Grammar approach itself as a systemic functional newborn model. The CG has been developed and applied to a limited number of languages, most of which belong to the Indo-European languages. As a result, applying this model to a Semitic language as

MSA has proven the efficacy and capability of this model to be implemented in different languages other than English. Using the CG framework to investigate the simple nominal and verbal clauses in MSA has shown this model as an applicable analytical descriptive framework that helps analyze the syntactic structure and match it with its semantics. Simultaneously, this framework has been proven to be open to a wider range of modifications and developments that fit the norms and peculiarities of any language intended to be described. So, there is always a possibility of developing different analyses for some elements, especially if these elements that serve certain functions in that language do not have their equivalents in English. For example, inspired by the CG notion of Complement Extension (CEx) (Tucker, 2005), the researcher has developed the concept of SEx (Subject Extension) to label a third-person pronoun called ضميرالفصل (damīr al-faṣl) (the separation pronoun). She has also argued against the CG analysis of 'cognition' and 'communication' Processes, proposing alternative accounts without imposing the CG onto the MSA syntax. Based on the priority of the language functional structure over formal structure, the CG has been proven efficient in overcoming some challenges in matching the syntactic features with the semantic ones.

The second contribution is made to understanding MSA syntax, which is characterized by exhibiting various structures of clauses and embeddings. The functional representation of the Arabic clause through the tree diagram contributes to the previous work of the researchers who showed great interest in the formal structure of Arabic at the expense of its semantics, and those researchers who placed more focus on the semantic features over its syntax. Following the CG framework, the study has explored the simple Arabic clause at two different levels: the syntactic level and the semantic level. At the syntactic level, the CG has allowed the researcher to investigate the structural representation of various clause elements and examine how these elements are structurally composed of, filled by, and expounded by. The study, therefore, has revealed the importance of the word case

endings in determining the functional semantic properties associated with the clause elements. At the semantic level, the CG, as a functional-oriented approach, has enabled the researcher to match the syntactic properties of the clause elements with their semantic roles in the Transitivity system network by integrating them into a single structure. By presenting the syntactic properties and the semantic roles of the simple clause elements in one single integrated structure, the study has shown the possibility of this matching, though challenging. The study has also demonstrated the interdependence of the relationship between syntax and semantics in that the recognition of either of them leads to the other.

8.5 Implications of the Study

Having presented the conclusions and the theoretical and empirical contributions of the study, the study offers some implications for course designers, teachers, and translators. To begin with, it is recommended that course designers should give the semantic aspects of language more attention while planning syllabi for Arabic learners. Course designers are recommended to include the experiential strand of meaning as an essential function of a language (Fontaine, 2008; Funamoto, 1999; Neale, 2002), as teaching the syntax of language cannot be done efficiently in isolation from its semantics. Focusing on materials that deal with the syntactic structure of MSA only does not showcase the other semantic choices and functions that the Arabic language conveys.

For teachers, learners should be taught how to match the syntactic properties of given clause elements with the experiential roles they express and integrate them into one single structure. It is the teachers' task to facilitate this matching strategy for Arabic learners because matching both levels of language would enable them to predict the covert elements that might be purposely deleted and develop a better understanding of the clause's multiple functional meanings.

It is also recommended for translators to incorporate the syntactic description into the semantic one when translating texts to ensure better interpretation of different types of texts. Putting in mind the principle that form is the realization of meaning would make them skillfully reflect on the intended meaning that might not be explicitly stated in the structure of texts and discourse in general.

8.6 Directions for Further Research

Even though the analysis undertaken has provided answers to the questions addressed in this study, this study is still considered a dip of a toe in the water. The study has its limitations that widely open new directions for further research. The first possible research to be called for is to examine the functional syntax of the complex clause (coordination). Due to the inevitable limited size of the study space and the inability of the software program to analyze long clauses, the study restricts itself to elucidating the functional syntax of the simple clause in MSA. So, embedding was the prominent relationship that demonstrates how elements are filled by the same or different class of units. As a result, this suggested research would model the various meanings of coordinating conjunctions (Linkers), and how they realize the relationship between clauses to make up complex sentences.

Another apparent important aspect of further research is to examine the underlying internal structure of phrases/groups. The current study has limited itself to the analysis of the syntax of the clause unit, so the recommended research will focus on analyzing the structural forms of the other units, such as noun group, quality group, prepositional group, quantity group, and the other two minor classes of units: the genitive cluster and the human proper name cluster. Specifically, the quality group has, for example, been used in the CG to refer to both the adjectival group and adverbial group. The quality group has other sub-types: 'superlative' and 'ordinative' quality groups, each of which has its

elements, such as 'temperer', apex, 'finisher', etc. Another class of groups is the quantity group, which has been considered as a syntactic unit on its own to describe a quantity of a 'thing', a 'situation', or a 'quality'. The elements that occur in the quantity group are 'amount' and 'adjuster'. Besides, the prepositional group, with its elements of preposition and completive, is widely and frequently used to make up clauses in MSA. Therefore, examining these groups in detail within the CG approach would help investigate if these classes of units together with their constituent elements have their equivalent elements in Arabic or not; and if there is a possibility to develop new functional labels for these elements. It would also provide a syntactic description of how they qualify other elements and how they are themselves qualified, how they are functionally labeled, and how they are co-ordinated. There is also a direction to study verbs or reified Processes, whose meaning is entirely achieved by a nominal group as their MExs. Such a study will provide a detailed description of not only their various morphological patterns but also the elements that are analyzed as their MExs. It would be an interesting attempt to distinguish between elements that make C, such as 'give a book', and those that serve as MEx, such as 'give a kiss'. There might be promising research to examine the PRs that come in the form of a nominal group (nominalization).

Moreover, focusing only on the semantic roles associated with the Transitivity strand of meaning paves the way for further research to be conducted on other strands/metafunctions of meaning. This proposed research would provide a functional representation of the simultaneous different types of meanings fused with each clause element. Fawcett identified eight strands of meaning experiential (Transitivity), interpersonal (Mood), polarity, validity assessment, affective, logical relations, thematic (Theme), and informational. In addition to these eight major strands, three minor strands of meaning are proposed by Fawcett, namely, the inferential, the metalingual, and the 'discourse organizational'. The study of these metafunctions might give more insights

into different semantic meanings that each clause element expresses to achieve a complete communicative message.

Possible research is recommended to investigate different linguistic issues that the current study has not paid attention to, such as the empty Subject, which lacks experiential meaning as it has no PR conflated with it (Fawcett, forthcoming c). To illustrate, the CG states two different types of structures where 'empty Subject' exists, usually occurring as the pronoun 'it'. The first is called 'experiential enhanced theme' where the Attribute is presented as an enhanced theme, such as *It was a dagger [At] that we saw that evening [Ca] was a badger* [At]. The equivalent clause of this example is *What we saw that evening* [Ca] was a badger [At]. The second type of empty Subject is called 'evaluative enhanced theme' in which the Attribute is thematized, such as *It is clear* [At] that Ike was there [Ca]. This clause is equivalent to *That Ike was there* [Ca] is clear [At]. According to Fawcett, these two types of empty Subjects are different structures as they realize different types of meanings (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 77). The suggested research will attempt to see if such constructions first exist in Arabic syntax; how syntactically and semantically similar or different they are from their counter peers in English.

Another work proposed to be carried out is to study the clause's Process types and PRs with metaphoric meanings. That is, a clause may have two types of meanings: a) literal meaning, which means the lexical meaning reflected by the word ordering; and b) intended meaning, which means the real meaning that the performer wants to convey (Fawcett, forthcoming c, p. 46). According to Fawcett (2012b), recognizing the equivalent expression that reflects the metaphoric meaning is one of the most challenging tasks that encounter an analyst because the analysis of the Process types and PRs in each type of meaning is different. Therefore, understanding the intended meaning of a metaphor cannot be done without looking into the preceding text and the context in which

this metaphor is used. The Arabic language is rich in idiomatic expressions that are worthy of further investigation.

A final prominent further work is recommended to be conducted on spoken texts, either Modern Standard or Colloquial Spoken Arabic, as the current study has been based on examining written texts. Describing Arabic spoken data will lead to reflecting a wide range of choices in meaning than written data. Accordingly, this research will motivate another research to analyze the functional syntax and semantics of other types of Mood in Arabic, such as 'information seeker' (traditionally known as Yes-No questions and Wh-question), exclamation, and proposal for action (known as directives, requests, suggestions, permissions, agreements, etc.). The study has not given this area any attention as its focus was on the 'information giver' type of Mood. Moreover, studying the system network of Mood in detail will throw more light on the impact of interlinguistic features of languages, such as social contexts, on the meaning realized in the clause.

REFERENCES

- Abdel-Hafiz, A. (2005). Verb agreement in Standard Arabic: an analysis in the minimality program. *Journal of Language and Linguistics* 4(1): 100-120.
- Abdul-Fattah, A. (2010). A Corpus-based study of conjunctive explicitation in Arabic translated and non-translated texts written by the same translators/authors. (Doctoral dissertation), The University of Manchester, Manchester. Retrieved from https://www.proquest.com/openview/3e6213651d353845ec663104afacbdec/1?pgq-origsite=gscholar&cbl=51922&diss=y
- Abdul-Raof, H. (1998). Subject, theme, and agent in Modern Standard Arabic. London: Routledge.
- Abu-Mansour, A. H. (1986). A functional analysis of sentence structure in Standard Arabic: a three-level approach (Prague school). (Doctoral dissertation), University of Florida, Florida Retrieved from http://ezproxy.um.edu.my:2048/login?url=https://search.proquest.com/docview/303462928?accountid=28930 ProQuest Dissertations & Theses Global database.
- Abunowara, A. M. (1996). Modality in English and Arabic: a study of the difficulties encountered by Arabic-speaking learners of English, using a systemic functional approach. (Doctoral dissertation), The University of Wales College, Cardiff, Retrieved from http://ezproxy.um.edu.my:2048/login?url=https://search.proquest.com/docview/301477545?accountid=28930 ProQuest Dissertations & Theses Global database.
- Akerejola, E. (2005). A text-based lexicogrammatical description of Oko: a systemic functional approach. (Doctoral dissertation), Macquarie University, Australia
- al- Sāmarrā'ī, F. (2007). Al-jumlatu al-Arabīah ta'lifu-hā wa aqsāmū-hā (Arabic sentence: its composition and types) (2 ed.). Amman: Dār al-Fikr.
- Al-Aqarbeh, R. N., and Al-Sarayreh, A. (2017). The clause structure of periphrastic tense sentences in Standard Arabic. *Lingua*, 185: 67-80. doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lingua.2016.07.007
- Al-Balushi, R. (2012). Why verbless sentences in Standard Arabic are verbless. *Canadian Journal of Linguistics/Revue canadienne de linguistique*, 57(1): 1-30. doi:https://doi.org/10.1017/S0008413100002292
- al-Fārisī, A. (1982). *Al-masā'il al-'skariyyat*. A. al-Manṣūrī (Ed) (2 ed.). Baghdād: Baghdād University
- Al-Hindawi, F. H., and Al-Ebadi, H. K. (2016). Systemic functional analysis of English and Arabic: a contrastive study. (Special issue of the international scientific conference). *AL-USTATH*: 193-214.
- Al-Horais, N. (2006). Arabic verbless sentences: is there a null VP? *Pragmalingüística*, 14: 101-116.

- Al-Jayrudy, L. (2011). *Ideological representations in English and Arabic news reports: a thematic structure analysis.* (Doctoral dissertation), Heriot-Watt University, Retrieved from https://www.ros-test.hw.ac.uk/bitstream/handle/10399/2459/Al-JayrudyL_0911_sml.pdf?sequence=1
- al-Jurjānī, A. (1984). *Dalā'il al-i'jāz (Signs of miracles)*. M. Shākir (Ed.). Cairo: Maktabat Al-Khānjī.
- Al-Khawalda, M. I. (2012). Syntactic analysis of the Arabic word "laysa": an auxiliary verb or a negative particle. *International Journal of Linguistics*, 4(3): 469-491.
- Al-Liheibi, F. M. M. (1999). Aspects of sentence analysis in the Arabic linguistic tradition, with particular reference to ellipsis. (Doctoral dissertation), Durham University, England. Retrieved from http://etheses.dur.ac.uk/1494/
- al-Mubarrad, A. (1994). *Al-Muqtaḍab*. M. 'Udaymah (Ed.), Kitāb al-Muqtaḍab (3 ed.). Cairo: The Ministry of Awqāf.
- al-Ṭanṭāwī, M. (1995). Nash'at al-naḥw wa tārīkh ashhar al-nuḥāh (The emergence of grammar and the salient grammarians). Cairo: Dār al-Ma'ārif
- ALA-LC Romanization Tables. (2012). In https://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpso/roman.html: Library of Congress.
- Alazzawie, A. (1990). *Adjunction in Arabic, case and chain theory*. (Doctoral dissertation), Simon Fraser University, Canada. Retrieved from http://summit.sfu.ca/system/files/iritems1/4611/b14456394_updated.pdf
- Alazzawie, A. (2016). An agree-based account of verbless copula sentences in Standard Arabic. *Ampersand*, 3: 151-162. doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amper.2016.08.001
- Aldahesh, A. Y. (2016). Pinning down the phenomenon of idiomatic phrasal verbs in Arabic. *International Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 3(1): 12-24.
- Alduais, A. M. S. (2012). Simple sentence structure of standard Arabic language and standard English language: a contrastive study. *International Journal of Linguistics*, 4(4): 500.
- Ali, A. M. (2015). *The Arabic particles inna wa akhawātu-hā at the syntax-semantics interface*. (Master's thesis), University of Kentucky UKnowledge, Lexington. Retrieved from https://uknowledge.uky.edu/ltt_etds/12
- Ali Fakih, A.-H. (2014). The null pro subject in early Modern English and Standard Arabic. *Arab World English Journal*, 5(4): 28.
- Alotaibi, Y. H. (2019). The Analysis of verbless sentences. *International Journal of Linguistics*, 9(6): 226-248.
- Alsuhaibani, S. (2012). *The verbal sentence in written Arabic*. (Doctoral dissertation), University of Exeter England, England. Retrieved from https://ore.exeter.ac.uk/repository/bitstream/handle/10036/3727/AlsuhaibaniS.pdf?sequence=2

- Andersen, T. H. (2017). Interpersonal meaning and the clause. In T. Bartlett & G. O'Grady (Eds.), *The Routledge handbook of systemic functional linguistics* (pp. 115-130). London: Routledge.
- Anshen, F., and Schreiber, P. A. (1968). A focus transformation of Modern Standard Arabic. *Language*, 44(4): 792-797.
- Aoun, J. E., Benmamoun, E., and Choueiri, L. (2010). *The syntax of Arabic*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Aziz, Y. Y. (1988a). Cohesion in spoken Arabic texts. In E. Steiner & R. Veltman (Eds.), Pragmatics, discourse and text: some systemically-inspired approaches (pp. 148-157). London: Frances Pinter.
- Aziz, Y. Y. (1988b). Theme-rheme organization and paragraph structure in standard Arabic. *Word*, *39*(2): 117-128. doi:https://doi.org/10.1080/00437956.1988.11435785
- Badawi, E., Carter, M. G., and Gully, A. (2016). *Modern written Arabic: a comprehensive grammar* (2 ed.). London and New York: Routledge.
- Bahloul, M. (2008). *Structure and function of the Arabic verb*. London and New York: Routledge.
- Bakir, M. J. (1979). Aspects of clause structure in Arabic: a study in word order variation in literary Arabic. (Doctoral dissertation), Indian University, Retrieved from https://www.proquest.com/openview/20eaf651291d6c3962e4f48a9e927042/1?pgq-origsite=gscholar&cbl=18750&diss=y
- Ball, F. (2002). A functional approach to adjuncts in English: a lexicogrammatical analysis of corpus data for implementation in Natural Language Generation. (Unpublished Doctoral dissertation), Cardiff University, Wales.
- Bardi, M., A. (2008). A systemic functional description Of the grammar Of Arabic. (Unpublished Doctoral dissertation), Macquarie University, Australia
- Bartley, L. V. (2018). Putting transitivity to the test: a review of the Sydney and Cardiff models. *Functional Linguistics*, 5(1): 4.
- Bateman, J. A. (1997). Enabling technology for multilingual natural language generation: the KPML development environment. *Natural Language Engineering*, *3*(1): 15-55.
- Benmamoun, E. (2000). *The feature structure of functional categories: a comparative study of Arabic dialects*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Benmamoun, E. (2008). Clause structure and the syntax of verbless sentences. In R. Freidin, C. P. Otero, & M. L. Zubizarreta (Eds.), *Foundational issues in linguistic theory* (Vol. 45, pp. 105-131). London: The MIT Press.
- Butler, C. S. (2003a). Structure and function: a guide to three major structural-functional theories: part 1: approaches to the simple clause. Amsterdan: John Benjamins.

- Butler, C. S. (2003b). Structure and function: a guide to three major structural-functional theories: part 2: from clause to discourse and beyond (Vol. 64). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Butler, C. S. (2013). Systemic functional linguistics, cognitive linguistics and psycholinguistics: opportunities for dialogue. *Functions of Language*, 20(2): 185-218.
- Butler, C. S. (2019). SFL in Context. In G. Thompson, W. L. Bowcher, L. Fontaine, & D. Schönthal (Eds.), *The Cambridge handbook of systemic functional linguistics* (pp. 259-282). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
- Caffarel, A., Martin, J. R., and Matthiessen, C. M. I. M. (2004). *Language typology: a functional perspective* (Vol. 253). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Cantarino, V. (1974). *Syntax of Modern Arabic prose. The simple sentence* (Vol. 1). London: Indian University Press.
- Choueiri, L. (2016). The pronominal copula in Arabic. *Brill's Journal of Afroasiatic Languages Linguistics*, 8(1): 101-135.
- Creswell, J. W. (2009). Research design: qualitative, quantitative, and mixed methods approaches (3 ed.). Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Dayf, S. (1968). Al-madāris al-naḥawiyyah (Schools of grammar). Cairo: Dār al-Ma'ārif.
- Edwards, M. (2006). Pronouns, agreement and focus in Egyptian Arabic. SOAS Working Papers in Linguistics, 14: 51-62.
- Eid, M. (1983). The copula function of pronouns. *Lingua*, *59*(2-3): 197-207. doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/0024-3841(83)90063-3
- Eid, M. (1991). Verbless sentences in Arabic and Hebrew. In B. Comrie & M. Eid (Eds.), Perspectives on Arabic linguistics: papers from the annual symposium on Arabic linguistics. Volume III (Vol. 80, pp. 31-62). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Fassi Fehri, A. (1993). *Issues in the structure of Arabic clauses and words* (Vol. 29). Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Fawcett, R. P. (1973). *Generating a sentence in systemic functional grammar*: University College London.
- Fawcett, R. P. (1980). Cognitive linguistics and social interaction. Towards an integrated model of a systemic functional grammar and the other components of a communicating mind. Heidelberg: Julius Groos & Exeter University.
- Fawcett, R. P. (1993). Decision making in Natural Language Generation: some current issues in the use of systemic functional grammars: Computational Linguistics Unit, University of Wales, Cardiff.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2000). A theory of syntax for systemic functional linguistics (Vol. 206). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

- Fawcett, R. P. (2005). *Invitation to systemic functional linguistics: the Cardiff Grammar as an extension and simplification of Halliday's systemic functional grammar* (2 ed.). Cardiff: Center for Language and Communication Research, Cardiff University.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2007). The many types of 'Theme' in English: their semantic systems and their functional syntax. Advanced version of a book in preparation. http://orca.cardiff.ac.uk/id/eprint/3765
- Fawcett, R. P. (2008). Invitation to systemic functional linguistics through the Cardiff Grammar: an extension and simplification of Halliday's systemic functional grammar. London: Equinox.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2011a). Problems and solutions in identifying processes and participant roles in discourse analysis. Part 1: introduction to a systematic procedure for identifying processes and participant roles. *Annual Review of Functional Linguistics*, 3: 34-87.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2011b). A semantic system network for MOOD in English. Work in progress. Available from fawcett@cardiff.ac.uk.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2012a). The concepts of 'parataxis' and 'hypotaxis' in clause relations: problems and solution. Unpublished paper, available from fawcett@cardiff.ac.uk.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2012b). Problems and solutions in identifying Processes and Participant Roles in discourse analysis. Part 2: how to handle metaphor, idiom and six other problems. *Annual Review of Functional Linguistics*, 3: 27-76.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2014). The cultural classification of 'things'. Towards a comprehensive system network of English noun senses In M. d. l. Á. G. González, F. J. R. de Mendoza Ibáñez, & F. Gonzálvez-García (Eds.), *Theory and practice in functional-cognitive space* (pp. 53-83). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Fawcett, R. P. (2018). Auxiliary Extensions: six new elements for describing English (Revised version). Cardiff University, Wales, 921-954.
- Fawcett, R. P. (forthcoming b). Chapter 21 of the functional syntax handbook: analyzing English at the level of form. London: Equinox
- Fawcett, R. P. (forthcoming c). *Chapter 2 of the functional semantics handbook:* analyzing English at the level of meaning. London: Equinox.
- Fawcett, R. P., and Huang, G. (1995). A functional analysis of the enhanced theme construction in English. *Interface: Journal of Applied Linguistics*, 10(1): 113-144.
- Fawcett, R. P., and Perkins, M. (1981). Project report: language development in 6-to 12-year-old children. *First Language*, 2(4): 75-79.
- Fawcett, R. P., Tucker, G. H., and Lin, Y. Q. (1996). *How a systematic functional grammar works: the role of realization in realization*: Computational Linguistics Unit, University of Wales, College of Cardiff.

- Fawcett, R. P., and Young, D. (1988). *New developments in systemic linguistics: theory and application* (Vol. 2). London and New York: Pinter.
- Fontaine, L. (2008). A systemic functional approach to referring expressions: reconsidering postmodification in the nominal group. (Doctoral dissertation), Cardiff University, Wales. Retrieved from http://www.cf.ac.uk/encap/fontaine/dissertation.html
- Funamoto, H. (1999). A systemic functional analysis of modal verbs and other related expressions in English: towards semantic system networks for Modality. (Doctoral dissertation), Doshisha University, Japan Retrieved from https://www.academia.edu/download/58161186/Funamoto_1999.pdf
- Gil, J. M., and Garcia, A. (2010). Transitivity, mood, and theme in Spanish: a first analysis in terms of Cardiff Grammar. *Revista Signos*, 43(72): 71-98. doi:10.4067/s0718-09342010000100004
- Gradin, C. P. (2011). Towards a systemic functional model for improving adult EAP students' academic lecture comprehension. (Master's thesis), University of British Columbia, Columbia. Retrieved from https://open.library.ubc.ca/collections/graduateresearch/42591/items/1.0077994
- Halliday, M. A. K. (1961). Categories of the theory of grammar. Word, 17: 92-214.
- Halliday, M. A. K. (1985). An introduction to functional grammar. London: Arnold
- Halliday, M. A. K. (1994). *An introduction to functional grammar* (2 ed.). London: Arnold.
- Halliday, M. A. K., and Matthiessen, C. M. I. M. (2004). *An introduction to functional grammar* (3rd Ed.). London: Arnold.
- Halliday, M. A. K., and Matthiessen, C. M. I. M. (2006). *Construing experience through meaning: a language-based approach to cognition*. London and New York: Continuum.
- Halliday, M. A. K., and Matthiessen, C. M. I. M. (2014). *Halliday's introduction to functional grammar* (4th ed.). London and New York: Routledge
- Holes, C. (2004). *Modern Arabic: structures, functions, and varieties*. Washington, D. C: Georgetown University Press.
- Huang, G., and Fawcett, R. P. (1996). A functional approach to two 'focussing' constructions in English and Chinese. *Language Sciences*, 18(1-2): 179-194. doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/0388-0001(96)00014-9
- Ibn al-Sarrāj , A. (1996). *Al-uṣūl fi al-naḥw (Foundations of grammar) 3 parts*. A. al-Fatlī (Ed.) Beirut: Mu'assasat al-Risālah
- Ibn Hishām, A. (1991). Mughnī al-labīb 'an kutub al-a'ārīb (The book that makes the smart person dispense with other Arabic books) 2 parts. M. M. Abudulḥamīd (Ed.). Beirut: Al-Maktabah Al-'aṣriyah.

- Ibn Jinnī, A. (1957). *Al-khaṣā'iṣ (The characteristics)*. M. al-Najjār (Ed.). Cairo: Dār al-Kutub.
- Ibn Maḍā', A. (1947). *Al-radd 'lā al-nuḥāh (Reply to the grammarians)* (1st ed.). S. Þayf (Ed.). Cairo: Dār al-Fikr al- 'Arabī.
- Ibn Ya'īsh, A. (n.d.). *Sharḥ al-mufaṣṣal (Explanation of al-mufaṣṣal) 10 parts*. Cairo: Idārat Al-Ṭiba'ah Al-Munīriyyah.
- Kamel, S. A. (2006). The textual component in Classical Arabic. In S. Boudelaa (Ed.), *Perspectives on Arabic linguistics XVI: papers from the sixteenth annual symposium on Arabic linguistics, Cambridge, March* 2002 (Vol. 266, pp. 103-130). Amsterdam: John Benjamins
- Kashyap, A. K. (2019). Language typology. In G. Thompson, W. L. Bowcher, L. Fontaine, & D. Schöntal (Eds.), *The Cambridge handbook of systemic functional linguistics* (pp. 767-792). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Kumar, A. (2009). *Mood, transitivity and theme in Bajjika in a typological perspective: a text-based description*. (Unpublished doctoral dissertation), Macquarie University, Australia.
- Lukin, A. (2015). A linguistics of style: Halliday on literature. In J. J. Webster (Ed.), *The Bloomsbury companion to M.A.K. Halliday* (pp. 348-365). London: Bloomsbury.
- Marogy, A. (2010). Kitāb Sībawayhi: syntax and pragmatics (Sībawayh's Book: syntax and pragmatics) (Vol. 56). The Netherlands: BRILL.
- Martin, J. R. (2004). Metafunctional profile of the grammar of Tagalog. In A. Caffarel, J. R. Martin, & C. M. I. M. Matthiessen (Eds.), *Language typology: a functional perspective* (Vol. 253, pp. 255-302). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Martin, J. R. (2020). Ideational semiosis: a tri-stratal perspective on grammatical metaphor. *DELTA: Documentação de Estudos em Lingüística Teórica e Aplicada,* 36: 1-27.
- Matthiessen, C., M. I. M. (1995). *Lexicogrammatical cartography: English systems*. Tokyo: International Language Sciences Publishers.
- Matthiessen, C., M. I. M. (2007). Lexicogrammar in systemic functional linguistics: descriptive and theoretical developments in the 'IFG' tradition since the 1970s. In R. Hasan, C. M. I. Matthiessen, & J. Webster (Eds.), *Continuing discourse on language: a functional perspective* (Vol. 2, pp. 765-858). London: Equinox.
- Matthiessen, C., M. I. M, and Kasper, R. (1988). Representational issues in systemic functional grammar. In J. D. Benson & W. S. Greaves (Eds.), *Systemic functional perspectives on Discourse* (pp. 36-175). Norwood, NJ: Ablex.
- Mohamed, M. T. (2013). Verb agreement features in Standard Arabic (SA): a minimalist approach. *Asian Social Science*, *9*(5): 83.

- Mohammad, M. A. (2000). Word order, agreement and pronominalization in Standard and Palestinian Arabic (Vol. 181). Amsterdam: John Benjamins
- Mohammed, T. A. S. (2011). *A taxonomy of problems in Arabic-English Translation: a systemic functional Linguistics approach.* (Doctoral dissertation), University of the Western Cape, Bellville, South Africa. Retrieved from https://etd.uwc.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11394/4103/Mohammed_phd.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y
- Montarce, J. (2014). On the transitivity analysis of communication processes in Argentine economic media discourse. *Onomazein*: 21-36. doi:10.7764/onomazein.alsfal.10
- Morely, G. D. (2000). Syntax in functional grammar: an introduction to lexicogrammar in systemic linguistics. London and New York: Continuum.
- Mwinlaaru, I., and Xuan, W. (2016). A survey of studies in systemic functional language description and typology. *Functional Linguistics*, 3(1): 1-41.
- Mwinlaaru, I. (2014). Style, character, and the theme of struggle and change: Chinua Achebe's Anthills of the Savannah. *Research in African Literatures*, 45(2): 103-121.
- Neale, A. (2002). More delicate Transitivity: extending the Process type system networks for English to include full semantic classifications. (Doctoral dissertation), Cardiff University, Wales.
- Neale, A. (2017). Transitivity in the Cardiff Grammar. In T. Bartlett & G. O'Grady (Eds.), *The Routledge handbook of systemic functional linguistics* (pp. 178-193). London: Routledge.
- Neuman, W. L. (2014). *Social research methods: qualitative and quantitative approaches* (7 ed.). England: Pearson
- Noor, M., Ali, M., Muhabat, F., and Kazemian, B. (2015). Systemic functional linguistics Mood analysis of the last address of the holy prophet (PBUH). *International Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 3(5-1): 1-9.
- O'Donnell, M., and Bateman, J. A. (2005). SFL in computational contexts: a contemporary history. In R. Hasan, C. M. I. M. Matthiessen, & J. J. Webster (Eds.), *Continuing discourse on language: a functional perspective* (Vol. 1, pp. 343-382). London: Equinox
- Obiedat, N. (1994). The presentation of thematic structure in the translation of English and Arabic political discourse. (Doctoral dissertation), Durham University, England. Retrieved from http://etheses.dur.ac.uk/1437/1/1437_v1.pdf
- Ouhalla, J. (1999). Focus and Arabic clefts. In G. Rebuschi & L. Tuller (Eds.), *The grammar of focus* (Vol. 24, pp. 335-359): John Benjamins.
- Ouhalla, J. (2013). Agreement unified: Arabic. In L. Cheng & N. Corver (Eds.), *Diagnosing syntax* (pp. 314–333). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

- Owens, J. (1984). Structure, class and dependency: modern linguistic theory and the Arabic grammatical tradition. *Lingua*, 64(1): 25-62. doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/0024-3841(84)90047-0
- Owens, J. (1988). The foundations of grammar: an introduction to medieval Arabic grammatical theory (Vol. 45). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Patpong, P. (2006). A systemic functional interpretation of Thai grammar: an exploration of Thai narrative discourse. (Doctoral dissertation), Macquarie University, Sydney, Australia Retrieved from https://www.researchonline.mq.edu.au/vital/access/services/Download/mq:3127/SOURCE4
- Peled, Y. (2009). Sentence types and word-order patterns in written Arabic: medieval and modern perspectives (Vol. 52). The Netherlands: BRILL.
- Potter, L. (2016). Ideological representations and Theme-Rheme analysis in English and Arabic news reports: a systemic functional approach. *Functional Linguistics*, 3(1): 1-20.
- Prakasam, V. (2004). A metafunctional profile of Telugu. In A. Caffarel, J. R. Martin, & C. M. I. M. Matthiessen (Eds.), *Language typology: a functional perspective* (Vol. 253, pp. 433–478). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Quiroz, B. (2008). Towards a systemic profile of the Spanish MOOD. *Linguistics & the Human Sciences*, 4(1): 31-65.
- Quiroz, B., and Martin, J. (2013). The interpersonal and experiential grammar of Chilean Spanish: towards a principled systemic-functional description based on axial argumentation. (Doctoral dissertation), University of Sydney, Australia. Retrieved from https://repositorio.uc.cl/xmlui/bitstream/handle/11534/22682/The%20interpersonal%20and%20experiential.pdf?sequence=2
- Rose, D. (2004). Metafunctional profile of the grammar of Pitjantjatjara. In A. Caffarel, J. R. Martin, & C. M. I. M. Matthiessen (Eds.), *Language typology: a functional perspective* (Vol. 253, pp. 479-534). Amsterdam: John Benjamins
- Ryding, K. C. (2005). A reference grammar of modern standard Arabic. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Shlonsky, U. (1997). Clause structure and word order in Hebrew and Arabic: an essay in comparative Semitic syntax. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Sībawayh, A. (1988). Al-kitcāb (The book) (3rd ed.). A. Hādrūn (Ed.). Cairo al-Khānjī.
- Simpson, P. (2004). Stylistics: a resource book for students. London: Routledge.
- Steiner, E., and Teich, E. (2004). Metafunctional profile of the grammar of German. In A. Caffarel, J. R. Martin, & C. M. I. M. Matthiessen (Eds.), *Language typology: a functional perspective* (Vol. 253, pp. 139–183). Amsterdam: John Benjamins

- Tam, H.-s. R. (2004). A systemic functional interpretation of Cantonese clause grammar. (Doctoral dissertation), University of Sydney, Australia.
- Teich, E. (1999). Systemic functional grammar in Natural Language Generation: linguistic description and computational representation. London: Cassell.
- Tench, P. (1996). The intonation systems of English. London: Cassell Academic.
- Teruya, K. (1998). An exploration into the world of experience: a systemic-functional interpretation of the grammar of Japanese. (Doctoral dissertation), Macquarie University, Australia Retrieved from https://www.researchonline.mq.edu.au/vital/access/services/Download/mq:1239-2/SOURCE2
- Teruya, K. (2007). A systemic functional grammar of Japanese (Vol. 2). London & New York: Continuum.
- Teruya, K., Akerejola, E., Andersen, T. H., Caffarel, A., Lavid, J., Matthiessen, C. M. I. M., Petersen, U. H, Patpong, P., and Smedegaard, F. (2007). Typology of MOOD: a text-based and system-based functional view. In H. Ruqaiya, C. M. I. M. Matthiessen, & J. Webster (Eds.), *Continuing discourse on language: a functional perspective* (Vol. 2, pp. 859-920). London: Equinox Publishing.
- Thai, M. D. (2004). Metafunctional profile of the grammar of Vietnamese. In A. Caffarel, J. R. Martin, & C. M. I. M. Matthiessen (Eds.), *Language typology: a functional perspective* (Vol. 235, pp. 397-428). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Tucker, G. (1998). The lexicogrammar of adjectives: a systemic functional approach to lexis. London: Cassell Academic
- Tucker, G. (2005). Extending the lexicogrammar: towards a more comprehensive account of extra clausal, partially clausal and non-clausal expressions in spoken discourse. *Language Sciences*, 27(6): 679-709.
- Versteegh, K. (1997a). The Arabic language. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Versteegh, K. (1997b). *Landmarks in linguistic thought volume III: the Arabic linguistic tradition*. London and New York: Routledge.
- Wei, H. (2014). "Bi-functional constituent constructions" in modern Mandarin Chinese: a Cardiff Grammar approach. *Language Sciences*, 42: 43-59.
- Wei, H. (2017). Subject-predicate predicate sentences in modern Mandarin Chinese: a Cardiff Grammar approach. *Linguistics*, 55(4): 935-977.
- Wei, H., and Jingyuan, Z. (2013). A study of Chinese serial verb constructions within the framework of the Cardiff Grammar. *Linguistics & the Human Sciences*, 8(1): 123-256.
- Wei, H., and Peng, Y. (2008). Extensions of the Cardiff Grammar over the Sydney Grammar. *Journal of University of Science and Technology Beijing (Social Sciences Edition)*, 1.

- Wei, H., and Rui-zhi, M. (2009). Overview of the Transitivity system within the Cardiff Grammar. *Journal of University of Science and Technology Beijing (Social Sciences Edition)*, 1.
- Xiang, D., and Liu, C. (2018). The semantics of MOOD and the syntax of the Let's-construction in English: a corpus-based Cardiff Grammar approach. *Australian Journal of Linguistics*, 38(4): 549-585.
- Zhang, W. W., and Li, M. L. (2017). A functional study of lexical conversion within Modern Chinese nominal group. *International Journal of English Linguistics*, 7(6): 138-147. doi:10.5539/ijel.v7n6p138